

# AQUOS PHONE EX SH-02F

INSTRUCTION MANUAL '14.1

# Introduction

Thank you for purchasing “SH-02F”.

Be sure to read this manual before and during use to ensure proper operation.

## Checking operation method

### Quick Start Guide (Basic package) (in Japanese only)

This guide describes operations of basic functions.

### User's Manual (App of the handset) (in Japanese only)

This manual describes detailed guidance and operations of functions.

In the home screen, [ ] ▶ [Instruction Manual]

To display help: [ ] ▶ [本アプリの使いかた] (How to use this app)

### User's Manual (in PDF format)

This manual describes detailed guidance and operations of functions.

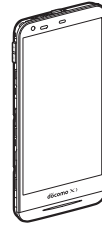
Download from the DOCOMO website

<http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english/support/trouble/manual/download/index.html>

※ The URL and contents of this manual are subject to change without prior notice.

- The screens and illustrations in this manual are shown as examples. The actual screens and illustrations may differ.
- The explanations in this manual are based on the case when the home app is docomo LIVE UX and the setting of kisekai is [Magenta]. If you change the home app, operation procedures etc. may be different from the explanations of this manual.
- Note that “SH-02F” is referred to as “handset” in this manual.
- This manual refers to microSD Card, microSDHC Card or microSDXC Card as “microSD Card” or “microSD”.
- Reproduction of this manual in part or in whole is prohibited.
- The contents of this manual are subject to change without prior notice.

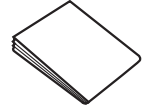
## Basic package



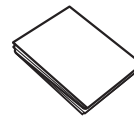
SH-02F  
(includes warranty)



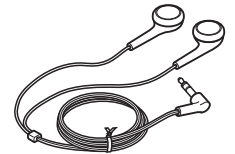
Back Cover SH71



Quick Start Guide  
(in Japanese only)



Notes on usage  
(in Japanese only)



Stereo Earphone (sample)  
(includes user's guide)

- For details on other optional parts P. 80 “Introduction of options and related devices”

## Contents

|                                              |    |
|----------------------------------------------|----|
| Using the handset                            | 3  |
| Precautions (ALWAYS FOLLOW THESE DIRECTIONS) | 4  |
| Handling precautions                         | 7  |
| Waterproof                                   | 10 |

## Before Using the Handset

|                                    |    |
|------------------------------------|----|
| Part names and functions           | 12 |
| Back cover                         | 12 |
| docomo mini UIM card               | 13 |
| Charging                           | 14 |
| Turning power on/off               | 15 |
| Basic operation                    | 16 |
| Character entry                    | 17 |
| Changing screen display to English | 20 |
| Initial setting                    | 20 |
| Incoming/Charging illumination     | 23 |
| Screen display/Icons               | 23 |
| Quick Launcher                     | 25 |
| Recent Apps                        | 26 |
| Home applications                  | 26 |

## docomo LIVE UX

|                             |    |
|-----------------------------|----|
| Home screen                 | 27 |
| App screen                  | 28 |
| Installing recommended apps | 30 |
| My magazine                 | 30 |
| Information on applications | 30 |

## Call

|                                |    |
|--------------------------------|----|
| Making a call                  | 31 |
| Receiving a call               | 32 |
| Operation during a call        | 32 |
| Outgoing/Incoming call history | 33 |
| Voice/Answering memo           | 33 |
| Call settings/Other            | 33 |
| Phonebook                      | 34 |

## Mail/Browser

|                           |    |
|---------------------------|----|
| docomo mail               | 37 |
| SMS                       | 37 |
| Email                     | 38 |
| Gmail™                    | 39 |
| Early Warning "Area Mail" | 40 |
| Browser                   | 41 |

## Apps

|                              |    |
|------------------------------|----|
| dmenu                        | 43 |
| dmarket                      | 43 |
| Play Store                   | 43 |
| Osaifu-Keitai                | 43 |
| TV (1Seg)                    | 45 |
| Camera                       | 47 |
| Album                        | 49 |
| Media Player                 | 50 |
| GPS/Navigation               | 51 |
| YouTube                      | 52 |
| Hangouts                     | 52 |
| Alarm/Clock                  | 52 |
| Schedule                     | 53 |
| Memo                         | 54 |
| Calculator                   | 54 |
| SH tool                      | 54 |
| Backing up data and settings | 57 |
| iD appli                     | 58 |

## Handset Settings

|                         |    |
|-------------------------|----|
| Setting menu            | 59 |
| Profile                 | 59 |
| Sound                   | 59 |
| Display                 | 60 |
| Storage                 | 60 |
| Battery & energy saving | 61 |
| Useful                  | 61 |
| Application             | 62 |
| Data usage              | 62 |
| More                    | 62 |
| docomo service/cloud    | 63 |
| Location services       | 63 |
| Lock & security         | 63 |
| Language & input        | 65 |
| Backup & reset          | 66 |
| Date & time             | 66 |
| Accessibility           | 66 |
| Device info             | 67 |

## File Management

|                   |    |
|-------------------|----|
| Storage structure | 68 |
| Contents Manager  | 69 |

## Data Communication

|                     |    |
|---------------------|----|
| iC communication    | 70 |
| Bluetooth® function | 70 |
| NFC communication   | 73 |

## External Device Connection

---

|                                                  |    |
|--------------------------------------------------|----|
| PC connection . . . . .                          | 74 |
| Wireless print . . . . .                         | 74 |
| Home network settings . . . . .                  | 75 |
| USB host function . . . . .                      | 75 |
| TV connection . . . . .                          | 75 |
| Cooperating with Blu-ray Disc recorder . . . . . | 76 |
| VPN (Virtual Private Network) . . . . .          | 76 |

## International Roaming

---

|                                                           |    |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|----|
| Outline of international roaming (WORLD WING) . . . . .   | 77 |
| Available services overseas . . . . .                     | 77 |
| Before use overseas . . . . .                             | 77 |
| Settings for use overseas . . . . .                       | 78 |
| Making/Receiving a call in your country of stay . . . . . | 78 |
| Setting international roaming . . . . .                   | 79 |

## Appendix/Index

---

|                                                          |    |
|----------------------------------------------------------|----|
| Introduction of options and related devices . . . . .    | 80 |
| Troubleshooting (FAQ) . . . . .                          | 80 |
| Smartphone Anshin Remote Support . . . . .               | 82 |
| Warranty and After-Sales Service . . . . .               | 83 |
| Updating software . . . . .                              | 83 |
| Upgrading Android version . . . . .                      | 85 |
| Main specifications . . . . .                            | 86 |
| Specific Absorption Rate (SAR) of Mobile Phone . . . . . | 88 |
| Export Administration Regulations . . . . .              | 89 |
| Intellectual Property Right . . . . .                    | 89 |
| Unlocking SIM lock . . . . .                             | 91 |
| Index . . . . .                                          | 92 |

## Using the handset

- The handset supports LTE, W-CDMA, GSM/GPRS and Wireless LAN systems.
- Because the handset relies on radio signals, it cannot be used in a place with no signal (such as tunnels, underground or in buildings), in places with a weak signal or outside the Xi service area or FOMA service area. You may not use the handset in the upper floors of a building even with no obstructions in sight. There may also be times when the signal is strong and you are not moving but the call is interrupted.
- Because the handset uses radio waves, it is possible for a third party to listen in on a conversation. However, since the LTE, W-CDMA and GSM/GPRS systems automatically apply a private call feature to every call, a third party that tries to listen in only hears noise.
- The handset converts conversations into a digital signal and sends it to the other party over the radio. If the signal cannot be reconverted properly by such as moving to an area with a weak signal, the voice may not be heard correctly.
- Take notes of information (e.g. the phonebook, calendar, note, voice memo, answering memo) stored on the handset or save the information to external memory devices such as microSD Cards and PCs periodically. DOCOMO shall not be liable for any loss of content due to a failure, repair, model change or other handling of the handset.
- As with PCs, some user-installed apps etc. may disrupt the stability of your handset performance or unexpectedly transmit information via the Internet causing improper use of your location information and personal information stored on the handset. Therefore, verify the supplier and operating conditions of the apps to be used before using them.
- The handset supports the FOMA Plus-Area and the FOMA HIGH-SPEED Area.
- When the available space on the microSD Card or the handset is insufficient, apps in use may not work properly. In this case, delete saved data.
- The handset does not support i-mode functions (connection to i-mode website (program), i-appli, etc.).
- The handset does not support providers other than sp-mode, mopera U and Business mopera Internet.
- In the home screen, [☰] ► [Settings] ► [Profile] to check your phone number (own number).
- The handset does not support Public Mode (Drive Mode).
- Setting the handset to the manner mode does not mute sounds (camera shutter sound etc.) other than the ringtone, operation sound, and various notification sounds.
- The handset automatically performs communication for some functions, for example, to synchronize data, check the latest software version or maintain connection with the server. Also, making a communication with large-volume data such as downloading apps or watching videos will lead to higher packet communication charges. Subscription to flat-rate packet communication services is highly recommended.
- Even while the Wi-Fi connection is set, packet communication charges may be incurred depending on the app and service you use.
- Software on the handset can be updated to up-to-date status (☞ P. 83 "Updating software").
- For details on software version of your handset ☞ P. 67 "Device info"
- New functions may be added to the handset or the operation method may change by upgrading the OS version. Check the DOCOMO website for the latest information of additions and changes.
- If the OS is upgraded, some apps used in the previous OS version may not be available or some unintended bugs may occur.
- Secure the security of the handset by setting Screen lock in case you lose it (☞ P. 63 "Lock & security").
- If your handset is lost, change your password for each account using a PC to prevent other persons from using Google services such as Gmail and Google Play™, and services such as Twitter and mixi.
- Google apps and their service contents are subject to change without prior notice.
- Read the terms of service of Google Inc. for details on Google services. Also, read each terms of service for details on other web services.
- Subscription to sp-mode is required to use tethering.
- Packet communication charges when using tethering differ according to your payment plans. Subscription to flat-rate packet communication services is highly recommended.
- For details on usage fees etc., refer to the following website. <http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/> (in Japanese only)
- The display is manufactured using high-precision technology, but it may contain dots that fail to light or that remain permanently lit on some areas. This is a characteristic of LCD and not a malfunction.
- The battery is built into the handset and you cannot replace it by yourself.
- Note that DOCOMO shall not guarantee operation of commercially available optional parts.

# Precautions (ALWAYS FOLLOW THESE DIRECTIONS)

- Before use, read these “Precautions” carefully and use your handset properly.  
Keep this manual in a safe place for future reference.
- These precautions contain information intended to prevent bodily injury to the user and to surrounding people, as well as damage to property, and must be observed at all times.

The following symbols indicate the different degrees of injury or damage that may occur if information provided is not observed and the handset is used improperly.

|                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                    |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  <b>Danger</b>  | This symbol indicates that “death or serious bodily injury may directly and immediately result from improper use”. |
|  <b>Warning</b> | This symbol indicates that “death or serious bodily injury may result from improper use”.                          |
|  <b>Caution</b> | This symbol indicates that “minor injury and/or property damage may result from improper use”.                     |

The following symbols indicate specific directions.

|                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                              |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  Indicates a prohibited action.                            |  Indicates not to handle the device with wet hands.                       |
|  Indicates not to disassemble the device.                  |  Indicates that instructions specified are compulsory (must be followed). |
|  Indicates not to use the device near water or get it wet. |  Indicates that the power cord must be unplugged from the outlet.         |

“Precautions” is explained in the following six sections.

- Handling the handset, adapters and docomo mini UIM card (general) . . . . . P. 4
- Handling the handset . . . . . P. 5
- Handling adapters . . . . . P. 6
- Handling docomo mini UIM card . . . . . P. 7
- Handling near electronic medical equipment . . . . . P. 7
- Material list . . . . . P. 7

# Handling the handset, adapters and docomo mini UIM card (general)

## Danger



**Do not use, store or leave the equipment in locations subject to high temperatures (near a fire or heating unit, in a kotatsu, under direct sunlight, inside a vehicle on a hot day, etc.).**  
May cause fires, burns or bodily injury.



**Do not place the equipment inside cooking appliances such as microwave ovens or pressure cookers.**  
May cause fires, burns, bodily injury or electric shock.



No disassembly

**Do not attempt to disassemble or modify the equipment.**  
May cause fires, burns, bodily injury or electric shock.



No liquids

**Do not get the equipment wet with water, drinking water, pet urine, sweat, etc.**  
May cause fires, burns, bodily injury or electric shock.  
Refer to the following for details on waterproofness.  
☞ P. 10 “Waterproof”



No liquids

**Do not allow liquids (water, drinking water, pet urine, sweat, etc.) to get inside the charger terminal or external connector terminal.**  
May cause fires, burns, bodily injury or electric shock.



Instruction

**Use only optional parts specified by NTT DOCOMO for use with the handset.**  
May cause fires, burns, bodily injury or electric shock.

## Warning



**Do not subject the equipment to strong force or impacts or throw it.**  
May cause fires, burns, bodily injury or electric shock.



**Do not allow conductive materials (such as metal objects and pencil lead) to come into contact with the charger terminal, external connector terminal or earphone/microphone terminal. In addition, do not insert such objects.**  
May cause fires, burns, bodily injury or electric shock.



**Do not cover or wrap the equipment with bedding etc. when using or charging.**  
May cause fires or burns.



Instruction

**Be sure to turn off the handset and not to charge the battery in locations such as gas stations where flammable gas is generated.**  
May cause a gas explosion or fire.  
To use Osaifu-Keitai in locations such as gas stations, be sure to turn off the power in advance (If NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock is set, disable the lock before turning off the power).



Instruction

**If you notice anything unusual, such as an unusual odor, overheating, discoloration or deformation during use, charging or storage, immediately follow the instructions below.**  
● Unplug the power plug from the outlet or cigarette lighter socket.  
● Turn off the handset.  
May cause fires, burns, bodily injury or electric shock.

## Caution



Don't

**Do not leave the equipment on unstable surfaces, such as on a wobbly table or sloped surface.**

May fall and cause injury.



Don't

**Do not store the equipment in locations that are subject to humidity, dust or high temperatures.**

May cause fires, burns or electric shock.



Instruction

**If being used by a child, have a guardian teach him/her the proper handling procedures. In addition, check that the child is using the equipment as directed.**

May result in bodily injury etc.



Instruction

**Keep the equipment out of the reach of young children.**

A young child may swallow the equipment or suffer bodily injury etc.



Instruction

**Be very careful when using the handset connected to adapters repeatedly or for long periods of time.**

The handset or adapters may become warm if you watch 1Seg etc. for a long time while charging. Touching high temperature areas for a prolonged period of time may cause skin irritations, itchiness or low-temperature burns in some people.

## Handling the handset

The following is the type of the internal battery built into the handset.

| Label    | Battery type |
|----------|--------------|
| Li-ion00 | Lithium-ion  |

## Danger



Don't

**Do not throw the handset into a fire.**

The internal battery may catch fire, explode, overheat or leak.



Don't

**Do not puncture, hit with a hammer or step on the handset.**

The internal battery may catch fire, explode, overheat or leak.



Instruction

**If the battery fluid etc. comes into contact with your eyes, do not rub your eyes but immediately rinse your eyes with clean water. Then seek prompt medical treatment.**

May result in loss of eyesight.

## Warning



Don't

**Do not point the illuminated light directly at someone's eyes. Especially when you shoot still pictures or videos of young children, keep 1 m or more distance from them.**

Do not use Mobile light near people's faces. Eyesight may be temporarily affected leading to accidents.



Don't

**Do not allow water or other liquids, metal, flammable material or other foreign objects to enter the docomo mini UIM card slot or microSD Card slot on the handset.**

May cause fires, burns, bodily injury or electric shock.



Don't

**Do not shine the light at anyone driving a car or other vehicles.**

May prevent a driver from driving safely and cause a traffic accident.



Instruction

**Turn off the handset in areas where the use of mobile phones is prohibited, such as in aircraft or hospitals.**

May interfere with the operation of electronic devices and electronic medical equipment.

Follow the instructions given by the respective medical facilities regarding the use of mobile phones on their premises.

Actions such as using a mobile phone aboard aircraft are prohibited and punishable by law.

However, follow the instructions on use of the handset given by the airline if the handset can be used aboard aircraft by setting the handset not to emit radio wave etc.



Instruction

**Keep the handset away from the ears during a call in which hands-free is set or while the ringtone is ringing.**

**When you attach the earphone/microphone etc. to the handset to play games, music, etc., do not make the volume too loud.**

Excessively high volume may damage your hearing.

Also, it may prevent you from hearing ambient sounds and cause an accident.



Instruction

**If you have a weak heart, take extra precautions when setting functions such as the vibrator and ringtone volume for incoming calls.**

May have harmful effects on your heart.



Instruction

**If you are using electronic medical equipment, contact the respective manufacturer or dealer to check whether the operation of the equipment is affected by signals.**

May interfere with the operation of electronic medical equipment etc.



Instruction

**Turn off the handset near high-precision electronic devices or devices that use weak electronic signals.**

May interfere with the operation of electronic devices.

**Take particular care with the following devices**

Hearing aids, implanted cardiac pacemakers, implanted cardioverter-defibrillators or other electronic medical equipment. Fire alarms, automatic doors, and other equipment controlled by electronic signals. If you use an implanted cardiac pacemaker, implanted cardioverter-defibrillator or other electronic medical equipment, contact the respective manufacturer or dealer to check whether the operation of the equipment is affected by signals.



Instruction

**If the display part or camera lens is damaged, be careful of broken glass and the exposed inside of the handset.**

The surface of the display is covered by a protective film while the surface of the camera lens is covered by a plastic panel so as to minimize the possibility of glass scattering. However, touching the broken or exposed parts may cause bodily injury.



Instruction

**If the internal battery leaks or emits an unusual odor, immediately stop using the handset and move it away from any naked flames or fire.**

The battery fluid is flammable and could ignite, causing a fire or explosion.

## ⚠ Caution



### Do not swing the handset by its strap etc.

May hit you or others around you, resulting in an accident such as bodily injury.



### Do not use a damaged handset.

May cause fires, burns, bodily injury or electric shock.



### For using a motion sensor and geomagnetic sensor, check the safety around, hold the handset and do not swing them more than necessary.

May cause injury etc.



### If the display is broken and the liquid crystal then leaks, do not get the liquid on your skin (face, hands, etc.).

May result in loss of eyesight or harm to your skin.  
If the liquid comes into contact with your eyes or mouth, immediately rinse your eyes or mouth with clean water and see a doctor.  
If the liquid comes into contact with your skin or clothes, immediately wipe it off with alcohol, and wash with water and soap.



### The surface of the display is covered with a protective film for ensuring the security (shatterproof property of reinforced glass panel) against any damages caused by the handset being dropped or receiving a strong impact etc. Do not remove the film forcibly or damage it.

Using the handset with the film removed may cause bodily injury if the display gets damaged.



### Do not dispose of the handset in ordinary garbage.

May cause fires or damage to the environment. Take the unnecessary handset to a sales outlet such as a docomo Shop or follow the instructions by a local institution that handles used handsets.



### If you use the handset in a vehicle, contact the vehicle manufacturer or dealer to check whether the operation of the vehicle is affected by signals.

May interfere with the operation of electronic equipment in some vehicle models. In this case, stop using the handset.



### Use of the handset may cause skin irritations such as itchiness, rashes or eczema in some people. If this occurs, immediately stop using the handset and seek medical treatment.

For details on materials of each part see P. 7 "Material list"



### Look at the display in a well-lit place, keeping a certain distance from the screen.

Otherwise, eyesight may be weakened.



### If the battery fluid etc. leaks, do not get the liquid on your skin (face, hands, etc.).

May result in loss of eyesight or harm to your skin.  
If the liquid comes into contact with your eyes, mouth, skin or clothes, immediately rinse them with clean water.  
If the liquid etc. comes into contact with your eyes or mouth, see a doctor immediately after rinsing your eyes or mouth.



### Never use the AC adapter in humid locations such as a bathroom.

May cause fires, burns or electric shock.



### The DC adapter should only be used in negative grounded vehicles. Never use it in positive grounded vehicles.

May cause fires, burns or electric shock.



### Do not touch adapters if you hear thunder.

May cause electric shock.



### Take care not to short-circuit the charger terminal when connected to an outlet or cigarette lighter socket. Also, take care not to allow any part of your body (hands, fingers, etc.) to come into contact with the charger terminal.

May cause fires, burns or electric shock.



### Do not place heavy objects on the cord of the adapter.

May cause fires, burns or electric shock.



### When plugging/unplugging an AC adapter into/from the outlet, do not allow metallic straps or other metallic objects to come into contact with the prongs of the plug.

May cause fires, burns or electric shock.



### Do not apply excessive force on an adapter by moving it up/down or to the left/right with the adapter connected to the handset.

May cause fires, burns, bodily injury or electric shock.



### Never try to charge the battery when the handset is wet.

The adapter is not waterproof. May cause electric shock, short circuit, etc. and lead to a malfunction, fires or burns.



### Do not handle the cord or charger terminal of the adapters or outlet with wet hands.

May cause fires, burns or electric shock.



### Always use the specified power supply and voltage.

### When using overseas, use the AC adapter that is available overseas.

Using the incorrect voltage may cause fires, burns or electric shock.

AC adapter: 100V AC

DC adapter: 12/24V DC (for negative grounded vehicles only)

AC adapter available overseas: 100 to 240V AC (Connect only with a household AC outlet)



### If the fuse in the DC adapter blows, always replace it with a fuse of the specified type.

May cause fires, burns or electric shock. Refer to the respective manuals for information on the correct fuse specifications.



### Wipe off any dust on the power plug.

May cause fires, burns or electric shock.



### Fully plug the AC adapter into the outlet.

May cause fires, burns or electric shock.



### Always grasp the adapters when unplugging the power plug from the outlet or cigarette lighter socket. Do not forcibly pull by the cord of the adapter.

May cause fires, burns or electric shock.

## Handling adapters

## ⚠ Warning



### Do not use if the cord of the adapter is damaged.

May cause fires, burns or electric shock.



Instruction

**When plugging/unplugging an adapter into/from the handset, plug/unplug the adapter horizontally and straightly, not applying excessive force on it.**  
May cause fires, burns, bodily injury or electric shock.



Unplug

**Unplug the power plug from the outlet or cigarette lighter socket when not using for a long time.**  
May cause fires, burns or electric shock.



Unplug

**Should water or other liquids enter the equipment, remove the power plug from the outlet or cigarette lighter socket immediately.**  
May cause fires, burns or electric shock.



Unplug

**Always unplug the power plug from the outlet or cigarette lighter socket before cleaning the equipment.**  
May cause fires, burns or electric shock.

## Handling docomo mini UIM card



### Caution



Instruction

**Be careful with the cutting surface when removing the docomo mini UIM card.**  
May cause bodily injury.

## Handling near electronic medical equipment



### Warning



Instruction

**If you have electronic medical equipment such as an implanted cardiac pacemaker or an implanted cardioverter-defibrillator, always carry or use your handset at least 15 cm away from your implant.**  
Electromagnetic signals may have harmful effects on the operation of the electronic medical equipment.



Instruction

**Patients receiving medical treatment away from a hospital or medical facility (e.g. home treatment) who are using electronic medical equipment other than implanted cardiac pacemakers or implanted cardioverter-defibrillators should consult the respective manufacturers for information regarding the effects of signals on the equipment.**  
Electromagnetic signals may have harmful effects on the operation of the electronic medical equipment.



Instruction

**If there is any chance that the distance between the handset and a person closest to you may get shorter than 15 cm such as when you cannot freely move around, set the handset not to emit radio wave in advance (by setting Airplane mode, turning the power off, etc.).**

Somebody nearby may be equipped with electronic medical equipment such as an implanted cardiac pacemaker or an implanted cardioverter-defibrillator. Electromagnetic signals may have harmful effects on the operation of the electronic medical equipment.



Instruction

**Follow the instructions given by the respective medical facilities regarding the use of the handset on their premises.**

## Material list

### Handset

| Part                                                   | Material/Surface treatment                                |
|--------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| Display side                                           | Reinforced glass/Shatterproof sheet of surface            |
| Lower part of display side                             | PC resin/UV coating for surface                           |
| Surrounding area of display side                       | PA resin/UV coating for surface                           |
| Surrounding area of earphone/microphone terminal       | PA resin/UV coating for surface                           |
| Power key                                              | PC resin/UV coating for surface, Discontinuous deposition |
| Side key                                               | Aluminum/Anodizing                                        |
| Camera panel                                           | Acrylic resin/Printing on the back                        |
| Mobile light                                           | PC resin                                                  |
| docomo mini UIM card slot                              | SUS/Ni plating                                            |
| microSD Card slot                                      | SUS/Ni plating                                            |
| docomo mini UIM card/microSD Card slot cover           | PC resin                                                  |
| Gasket of docomo mini UIM card/microSD Card slot cover | Silicon rubber                                            |
| Back of display side                                   | PA resin/UV coating for surface                           |
| Speaker mesh                                           | PET/Silk print on the back                                |
| Surrounding area of speaker mesh                       | Volara                                                    |
| Waterproof sheet for cabinet                           | PET/Silk print on the back                                |
| Screw                                                  | Steel/Black Ni plating, Ni plating                        |
| External connector terminal                            | SUS/Sn plating, Copper alloy/Gold plating                 |
| Surrounding area of external connector terminal        | PA resin/UV coating for surface                           |
| Mouthpiece/Microphone cushion                          | PORON                                                     |

### Back cover

| Part       | Material/Surface treatment      |
|------------|---------------------------------|
| Back cover | PC resin/UV coating for surface |

## Handling precautions

### General notes

- **SH-02F is waterproof, however, do not allow water to get inside the handset and do not allow accessories or optional parts to get wet.**

The adapter and docomo mini UIM card are not waterproof. Do not use in humid or steamy areas such as bathrooms and avoid exposing to rain and other forms of moisture. If they are carried close to the skin, perspiration may cause internal components to corrode and result in malfunction. Note that if a problem is found to be due to moisture, the handset and parts are not covered by warranty and in some cases may be irreparable. Even when repairs are possible, repair charges will be incurred, since the damage is not covered by warranty.

- **Clean only with a soft and dry cloth (such as the type used for eyeglasses).**
  - Forceful rubbing of the LCD with a dry cloth may scratch its surface.
  - Note also that LCD coating may stain if moisture or soiling is left on the surface for a long period.
  - Never use chemicals such as alcohol, thinners, benzene or detergents, as these agents may erase the printing or cause discoloration.
- **Occasionally clean terminals with a dry cotton swab etc.**  
Dirty terminals may result in poor connections and loss of power or insufficient battery charge. Keep the terminals clean with a dry cotton swab etc.  
Be careful with the terminals while cleaning them.
- **Do not place the equipment near an air conditioning vent.**  
Condensation formed due to rapid changes in temperature may cause internal corrosion and lead to a malfunction.
- **Do not apply excessive force on the handset etc. when using it.**  
Carrying the handset in a tightly packed bag or sitting on the handset in your pocket may cause damage to the display, internal components, etc. or result in a malfunction.  
Keeping an external connector device plugged into the external connector terminal or earphone/microphone terminal may cause damage to the connector or result in a malfunction.
- **Do not rub or scratch the display with metal etc.**  
May scratch it and cause malfunction or damage.
- **Read the respective manuals or user's guides supplied with the optional parts carefully.**

## Notes about the handset

- **Do not forcefully press the surface of the touch panel or operate with a pointed object such as a fingernail, ballpoint pen or pin.**  
May damage the touch panel.
- **Avoid using the handset in extremely high or low temperatures.**  
Use the handset within the range of a temperature between 5°C and 35°C and a humidity between 45% and 85%.
- **Using the handset close to land-line phones, TVs, radios, etc. may have harmful effects on the operation of such equipment. Move as far away as possible from such items before use.**
- **Keep a separate memo noting information stored on the handset.**  
DOCOMO shall not be liable for any loss of content.
- **Do not drop or otherwise subject the handset to severe impact.**  
May damage the handset or cause a malfunction.
- **When connecting an external connector device to the external connector terminal or earphone/microphone terminal, do not put it in obliquely and do not pull it while it is plugged in.**  
May damage the handset or cause a malfunction.
- **The handset becomes warm during use or charging but this is not a malfunction.**
- **Do not leave the camera in direct sunlight.**  
May cause discoloration or burn-in of pixels.
- **Use the handset with the docomo mini UIM card/microSD Card slot cover closed.**  
Dust, water, etc. may get inside and cause a malfunction.
- **Do not use the handset without the back cover.**  
May damage the handset or cause a malfunction.
- **While using a microSD Card, do not remove the card or turn off the handset.**  
May cause data loss or a malfunction.
- **Never place a magnetic card near the handset.**  
The stored magnetic data in cash cards, credit cards, telephone cards, floppy disks, etc. may be erased.
- **Never place magnetized items near the handset.**  
Putting highly magnetized items closer may cause an error.

- **The handset has a function to judge whether a proper internal battery is used. Do not replace the internal battery by yourself.**
- **When an improper internal battery is used, you cannot charge the battery.**
- **DOCOMO shall not be liable for any accident or malfunction arising from using an improper internal battery.**
- **The internal battery is a consumable product.**  
Though the battery life varies with use, change the battery if the battery life is extremely short even after being fully charged. For details on replacing the internal battery, contact the number listed in "Repairs" (in Japanese only) on the last page or a repair counter that DOCOMO specifies.
- **Charge battery in areas where ambient temperature is between 5°C and 35°C.**
- **The battery life depends on the usage and deterioration of the battery.**
- **Avoid the following situations when the handset is stored.**
  - Storage with the internal battery fully charged (immediately after charging is completed)
  - Storage with no battery level (cannot turn the main body on)  
May lower the performance or shorten the usable life of the internal battery.  
Approximately 40% is recommended as the proper battery level for storage.
- **The surface of the handset uses the aluminum material.**  
Note that dent and abrasion are easily remained as aluminum is a soft material.

## Notes about adapters

- **Charge the battery in areas where the ambient temperature is between 5°C and 35°C.**
- **Do not charge the internal battery in the following locations.**
  - Areas with high humidity or dust, or in areas exposed to frequent vibrations
  - Close to land-line phones, TVs, radios, etc.
- **Adapters may become warm during charging but this is not a malfunction.**
- **Do not use the DC adapter to charge the battery when the car engine is not running.**  
May cause the car battery to run down.
- **When using an outlet with a feature to prevent the plug from being removed accidentally, follow the instructions in the outlet user's guide.**
- **Do not subject to strong force or impacts. Also, do not deform the charger terminals.**  
May cause a malfunction.

## Notes about docomo mini UIM card

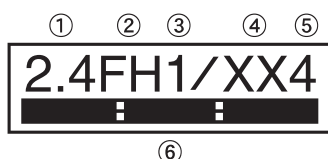
- **Do not apply unnecessary force when inserting/removing the docomo mini UIM card.**
- **Customer is responsible for malfunctions arising from inserting docomo mini UIM card into a different IC card reader/writer etc.**
- **Always keep IC area clean.**
- **Clean only with a soft and dry cloth (such as the type used for eyeglasses).**
- **Keep a separate memo and note information stored on the docomo mini UIM card.**  
DOCOMO shall not be liable for any loss of content.
- **To protect the environment, please take any unneeded docomo mini UIM cards to a sales outlet such as a docomo Shop.**
- **Do not damage, touch haphazardly or short-circuit the IC.**  
May cause data loss or a malfunction.
- **Do not drop or otherwise subject the docomo mini UIM card to severe impact.**  
May cause a malfunction.

- **Never bend the docomo mini UIM card or place heavy objects on it.**  
May cause a malfunction.
- **Do not insert the docomo mini UIM card to the handset with a label or sticker attached on the card.**  
May cause a malfunction.

## Notes on using Bluetooth function

- The handset supports the security function that meets the Bluetooth specification for security during communication using Bluetooth functions. However, the security may not be sufficient depending on the configuration etc. Take care of the security while making communication using Bluetooth function.
- Even if any leak of data or information occurs while making communication using Bluetooth function, DOCOMO shall not be liable for any loss of content.
- **Radio frequencies**

In the home screen, [ ] ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Device info] ▶ [Authentication] to confirm the radio frequencies the Bluetooth function of the handset uses. The followings are the descriptions:



- ① 2.4: This radio equipment uses the 2400 MHz band.
- ② FH: The modulation system is the FH-SS system.
- ③ 1: The estimated coverage distance is 10 m or less.
- ④ XX: Another modulation system is used.
- ⑤ 4: The estimated coverage distance is 40 m or less.
- ⑥ : All radio frequencies between 2400 MHz and 2483.5 MHz are used and the frequencies for mobile object identifiers shall not be avoided.

- **Cautions on using Bluetooth devices**

Bluetooth operates at radio frequencies assigned to the in-house radio stations for a mobile object identifier that have to be licensed and is used in production lines of a factory, specific unlicensed low power radio stations, and amateur radio stations (hereafter, referred to as “another radio station”) in addition to industrial, scientific and medical devices or home electric appliances such as microwave ovens.

1. Before using the handset, make sure that “another radio station” is not operating nearby.
2. If radio interference between the handset and “another radio station” occurs, avoid interference by moving immediately to another place or “turning off the power”.
3. Contact the number listed in “General Inquiries” on the last page for further details.

## Notes about wireless LAN (WLAN)

- **Wireless LAN (WLAN)** uses radio waves to communicate information. Therefore, it has an advantage of freely connecting to the LAN within the service area. On the other hand, if security setting is not set, it is possible for a malicious third party to intercept the communication contents or hack. It is recommended to set security setting at your own risk and judgement.
- **Wireless LAN**

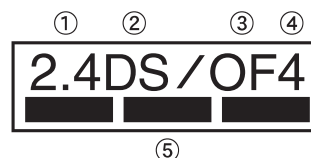
Do not use wireless LAN near magnetic devices such as electric appliances or AV/OA devices or in radio waves.

- Magnetism or radio waves may increase noises or disable communications (especially when using a microwave oven).
- When used near TV, radio, etc., reception interference may occur or channels on the TV screen may be disturbed.

- If there are multiple wireless LAN access points nearby and the same channel is used, search may not work correctly.

- **Radio frequencies**

In the home screen, [ ] ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Device info] ▶ [Authentication] to confirm the radio frequencies the WLAN-installed devices use. The followings are the descriptions:



- ① 2.4: This radio equipment uses the 2400 MHz band.
- ② DS: The modulation system is the DS-SS system.
- ③ OF: The modulation system is the OFDM system.
- ④ 4: The estimated coverage distance is 40 m or less.
- ⑤ : All radio frequencies between 2400 MHz and 2483.5 MHz are used and the frequencies for mobile object identifiers shall be avoided.

Available channels for the handset's wireless LAN are between 1 and 13. Note that other channel access points cannot be connected.

Available channels may vary depending on the country.

For use in an aircraft, contact the airline beforehand.

- **Cautions on using 2.4 GHz devices**

WLAN-installed devices operate at radio frequencies assigned to the in-house radio stations for a mobile object identifier (radio stations requiring a license) used in production lines of a factory, specific unlicensed low power radio stations (radio stations requiring no license), and amateur radio stations (radio stations requiring a license) in addition to industrial, scientific and medical devices or home electric appliances such as microwave ovens.

1. Before using this device, make sure that the in-house radio stations for a mobile object identifier, specific unlicensed low power radio stations and amateur radio stations are not operating nearby.
2. If the device causes harmful radio interference to the in-house radio stations for a mobile object identifier, immediately change the radio frequency or stop use, and contact the number listed in “General Inquiries” on the last page for crosstalk avoidance, etc. (e.g. partition setup).
3. If the device causes radio interference to specific unlicensed low power radio stations for a mobile object identifier or amateur radio stations, contact the number listed in “General Inquiries” on the last page for further details.

- **Cautions on using 5 GHz devices**

In the 5 GHz frequency band, three bands of 5.2 GHz/5.3 GHz/5.6 GHz band (W52/W53/W56) are available.

- W52 (5.2 GHz band/36, 40, 44, 48 ch)
- W53 (5.3 GHz band/52, 56, 60, 64 ch)
- W56 (5.6 GHz band/100, 104, 108, 112, 116, 120, 124, 128, 132, 136, 140 ch)

Using 5.2 GHz/5.3 GHz band wireless LAN (W52/W53) outdoors is prohibited by the Radio Law.

## FeliCa and NFC reader/writer

- The FeliCa and NFC reader/writer, P2P function of the handset uses weak radio waves whose handling does not require a license of radio station.
  - The frequency in use is the 13.56 MHz band. When another reader/writer, P2P function is being used nearby, keep enough distance from it. Make sure that there is no radio station using the same frequency band in the nearby area.
  - For use in an aircraft, contact the airline beforehand. Use of FeliCa and NFC reader/writer, P2P function may be restricted in some countries.
- Check conditions such as regulations of the country/region to use the function.

## Caution

- **Never use the handset that is modified. Using a modified device violates the Radio Law and/or the Telecommunications Business Law.**

The handset follows the regulations regarding the certification of conformity with technical regulations for the specified radio station based on the Radio Law and authentication of conformity with technical regulations for the handset based on the Telecommunications Business Law, and the “Technical Conformity Mark (㊞)” can be displayed on the electronic nameplate of the handset as a proof. You can see it by operating as follows. In the home screen, [⌂] ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Device info] ▶ [Authentication] If the screws of the handset are removed and a modification is given to the inside, the certification of conformity with technical regulations etc. will become invalid. Never use the handset without the valid certification etc. Doing so violates the Radio Law and/or the Telecommunications Business Law.

- **Be careful when using the handset while driving a motor vehicle.**

Using a mobile phone in hand while driving is regarded as a punishable act.

However, the punishment has no application in some cases such as when rescuing sick and injured people or maintaining public safety.

- **Use the FeliCa reader/writer function only in Japan.**

The FeliCa reader/writer function of the handset conforms to the domestic radio wave standards. Using the function overseas may result in punishment.

- **Never change the basic software improperly.**

This may be regarded as a conversion of software and repairs may be refused.

- **Be careful not to connect the handset to a PC using Micro USB Cable 01 (sold separately) in areas where the use of mobile phones is prohibited.**

Power may automatically turn on.

## Waterproof

**SH-02F is waterproof to IPX5\*1 and IPX7\*2 standards if the docomo mini UIM card/microSD Card slot cover is securely closed as well as the back cover is attached.**

\*1 IPX5 means that phone keeps functioning after being subjected to a jet flow (approximately 12.5 liters/min) discharged from a nozzle (inner diameter: 6.3 mm), from all directions (approximately 3 m from the handset) for 3 minutes or more.

\*2 IPX7 means that SH-02F phone keeps functioning after it is slowly submerged to depth of 1 m in static tap water at room temperature, left there for approximately 30 minutes and then taken out.

## What you can do with waterproof of SH-02F

- You can call without using an umbrella in the rain (for rainfall of approximately 20 mm per hour).
- You can rinse off dirt from the handset. Wash the handset with low-pressure water flow (6 liters/min or lower and tap water at room temperature (between 5°C and 35°C)), holding it approximately 10 cm below faucet or shower head. Securely close the docomo mini UIM card/microSD Card slot cover and wash by using only your hands, not a brush or sponge, with the back cover attached. Drain the handset before use (☞ P. 11 “Draining water when the handset gets wet”).
- You can use the handset at a poolside. Do not throw water in a swimming pool on the handset or soak the handset in the water of a swimming pool.

## Things to keep in mind

**To maintain waterproof performance, check the followings.**

- Securely close the docomo mini UIM card/microSD Card slot cover and back cover. Be careful not to apply excessive force on the rubber gasket when opening and closing.

- Make sure that the docomo mini UIM card/microSD Card slot cover and back cover are completely closed without floating.
- To maintain waterproof performance, the handset has the docomo mini UIM card/microSD Card slot cover and back cover that allow you to close securely. May cause injuries to your nails or fingers if you try to open them forcibly.
- For details on how to open/close the docomo mini UIM card/microSD Card slot cover and attach/remove the back cover ☞ P. 13 “docomo mini UIM card”, P. 12 “Back cover”

- To maintain waterproof performance, replacement of parts is recommended every 2 years regardless of whether the handset appears normal or abnormal. DOCOMO replaces the parts as a chargeable service. Bring the handset to a repair counter that DOCOMO specifies.

## Precautions

- When your hands or the handset is wet, do not attach/remove the back cover or open/close the docomo mini UIM card/microSD Card slot cover.
- Close the docomo mini UIM card/microSD Card slot cover and back cover securely. Even a fine obstacle (one hair, one grain of sand, tiny fiber, etc.) put between contact surfaces may allow water to get inside.
- If the handset gets wet with water or other liquids with the docomo mini UIM card/microSD Card slot cover or back cover opened, the liquid may get inside causing electric shocks or malfunction. Stop using the handset, turn off the power and contact a repair counter that DOCOMO specifies.
- The rubber gasket of the contact surface between the main body and docomo mini UIM card/microSD Card slot cover plays an important role in maintaining waterproof performance. Do not remove or scratch it. Also, prevent dust from adhering to it. If the rubber gasket is damaged or deformed, replace it at a repair counter that DOCOMO specifies.
- Do not insert a pointed object through the docomo mini UIM card/microSD Card slot cover gaps. It may cause damage to the rubber gasket and allow water to get inside.
- If the back cover is damaged, replace it. Water may get inside from a damaged section causing troubles such as electric shocks or corrosion of the battery.
- Do not use the handset underwater (including key operations). May cause malfunction.
- Do not apply water flow stronger than allowed (over 6 liters/min). May cause malfunction though SH-02F provides waterproof performance of IPX5.
- Do not let the handset get wet with liquids other than water at room temperature (between 5°C and 35°C) or do not soak the handset in the liquids. If you let the handset get wet with liquids other than water at room temperature or soak the handset in the liquids, stop using the handset and wash it with water at room temperature.
- Do not wash the handset in a washing machine etc.
- To prevent condensation, do not bring the handset from a cold place to a warm place without letting the handset warmed to room temperature.
- Never soak the handset in hot spring water or water containing soap, detergent or bath powder.
- Do not soak the handset in hot water, use it in a sauna or apply hot air (from a hair dryer etc.) to it.
- Do not soak the handset in seawater.
- Do not put the handset directly on sand/dirt.
- Do not leave the handset wet. In cold places, water may freeze and cause malfunction.
- The handset does not float on water.
- Do not let the handset fall. It may become scratched and cause the waterproof performance to degrade.
- Do not leave water on the mouthpiece/microphone, earpiece, speaker or earphone/microphone terminal. Such water may interfere with talking.

- Do not poke the mouthpiece/microphone, earpiece, speaker, external connector terminal, earphone/microphone terminal, etc. with a pointed object.
- Do not insert an earphone/microphone to the handset while the handset is wet. May cause malfunction.
- Accessories and optional parts are not waterproof. Do not use them in rooms where water is regularly in use such as bathroom, shower room, kitchen or lavatory.



Soap/Detergent/  
Bath powder



Seawater



Swimming pool



Hot spring



Sand/Dirt

- DOCOMO does not guarantee actual operations under all states. Malfunctions deemed to be caused by inappropriate operation by the customer are not covered by the warranty.

## Draining water when the handset gets wet

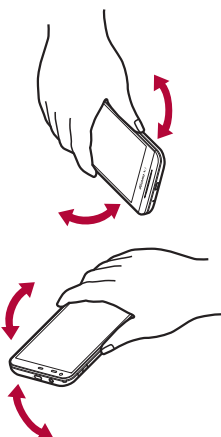
When the handset is wet, water may flow out after wiping it off. Drain the water by following the steps below.

### 1 Wipe off water on the handset surface with dry and clean cloth etc.

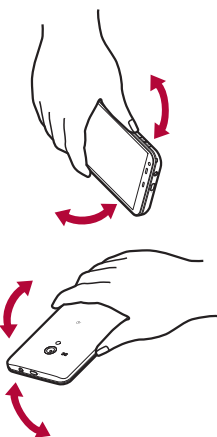
- If a strap is attached, dry the strap as well.



### 2 Shake the handset approximately 20 times, securely holding it, until there is no more water splattering



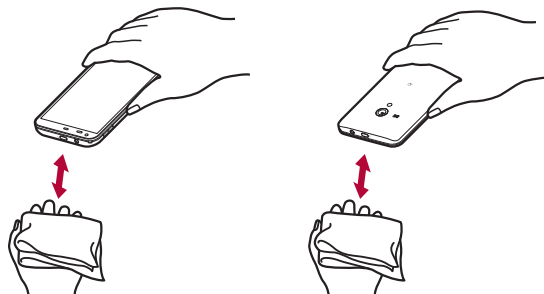
To drain water off the speaker, shake the handset with the speaker turned down



To drain water off the earpiece, shake the handset with the earpiece turned down

### 3 Softly press the handset against dry and clean cloth etc. to wipe off water remaining in the grooves of the mouthpiece/microphone, earpiece, speaker, keys, external connector terminal, earphone/microphone terminal, strap hole, etc.

- Pat the opening with cloth etc. to remove water because there may be any water remaining in the grooves of each part.



### 4 Wipe off water drained from the handset with dry and clean cloth etc. and leave it for a while to dry it

- Water, if any, remaining in the main body may ooze up after wiping off.
- Pat the opening with cloth etc. again to remove water because you may not be able to hear sounds well if drainage is insufficient.

## Charging

Accessories and optional parts are not waterproof. Check the followings before and after charging.

- Make sure that the handset is not wet. If the handset is wet or after the handset is wet, adequately drain it and wipe off water with dry and clean cloth etc.

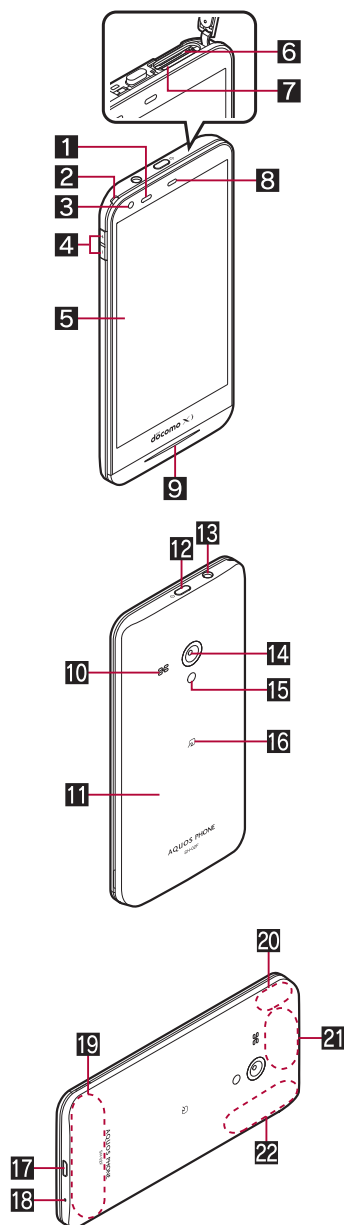
## Warning

**Never try to charge the battery when the handset is wet.**

- An AC adapter is not waterproof. May cause electric shock, short circuit, etc. and lead to a malfunction, fires or burns.
- Do not touch the AC adapter with your hands wet. May cause electric shock.
- Do not use the AC adapter in a place subject to water. Do not use it in rooms where water is regularly in use such as bathroom, shower room, kitchen or lavatory. May cause fires or electric shock.

# Before Using the Handset

## Part names and functions



### Attaching a strap

When attaching a strap, remove the back cover, put the strap through the strap hole, put it on the hook inside and attach the back cover.



### 1 Proximity sensor/Brightness sensor\*1

- The proximity sensor detects the distance to the face and prevents inadvertent operation of touch panel during a call.
- The brightness sensor detects the brightness of the surrounding area and adjusts the brightness of the backlight.

### 2 Strap hole

### 3 In-camera

### 4 : Volume UP/DOWN key

- Adjusts the volume in each function.

### 5 Display/Touch panel

### 6 docomo mini UIM card slot\*2

### 7 microSD Card slot\*2

### 8 Earpiece

### 9 Incoming/Charging illumination

### 10 Speaker

- Ringtone, music, etc. can be heard from here.
- The other party's voice can be heard from here during a hands-free call.

### 11 Back cover

### 12 : Power key

- Use to turn the power on/off, etc.
- Use to turn the display on/off.

### 13 Earphone/Microphone terminal

### 14 Out-camera

### 15 Mobile light

### 16 mark

- IC card is contained (It cannot be removed).

### 17 External connector terminal

### 18 Mouthpiece/Microphone

### 19 FOMA/Xi antenna\*3

### 20 Wi-Fi/Bluetooth antenna\*3

### 21 1Seg antenna\*3

### 22 GPS antenna\*3, FOMA/Xi sub antenna\*3

\*1 Do not cover the sensor area with your hand or paste a sticker etc. on the sensor area. The sensor may not work properly.

\*2 This is located under the back cover.

\*3 The antenna is built into the main body. Covering the antenna area with your hand may influence the quality.

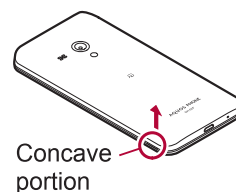
### Earphone/Microphone terminal

- For details on the corresponding earphone/microphone, refer to the following website.  
[http://k-tai.sharp.co.jp/support/d/sh-02f/peripherals.html#!/earphone\\_support](http://k-tai.sharp.co.jp/support/d/sh-02f/peripherals.html#!/earphone_support) (in Japanese only)

## Back cover

### Removing back cover

**1** Securely hold the handset with your both hands and slightly open the back cover by hooking the tip of a finger under the concave portion of the handset



**2** Unhook the tabs by sliding the tip of the finger in the direction of the arrow



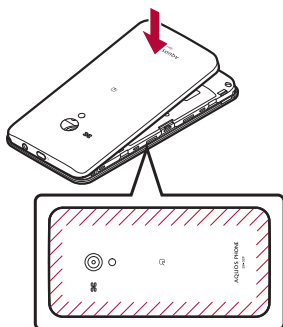
**3** Remove the back cover upward



## ■ Attaching back cover

- 1 Confirm the direction of the back cover, attach it to the handset from the top so that the power key fits in the back cover and press the surrounding area (shaded area) of the back cover securely

- Make sure there is no space between the back cover and the handset.



- Do not use the handset with the back cover removed.
- Securely attach the back cover. If not attached securely, the back cover may come off and the waterproof performance may be impaired, resulting in allowing water to get inside.
- The back cover may be damaged if it is attached or removed forcibly. Be careful not to apply excessive force on it.

## docomo mini UIM card

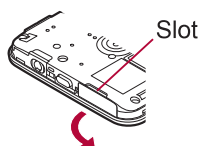
A docomo mini UIM card is an IC card that records personal information, such as phone numbers.

- You cannot make a call and use functions such as packet communication etc. without inserting a docomo mini UIM card.
- You cannot use the docomo mini UIM card with devices other than compatible ones and may not be able to use a part of the website and data when you change from the UIM.
- In Japan, you cannot call to the emergency number (110, 119 or 118) without inserting a docomo mini UIM card.
- A docomo mini UIM card has a security code called PIN code (☎ P. 65 “PIN code”).
- The handset supports only docomo mini UIM card. Change the UIM at a docomo Shop.
- Before inserting or removing the docomo mini UIM card, turn off the power, position the back facing upwards and remove the back cover (☎ P. 12 “Removing back cover”). Hold the handset securely with your hand. After inserting or removing the docomo mini UIM card, attach the back cover (☎ P. 13 “Attaching back cover”).

## ■ Inserting docomo mini UIM card

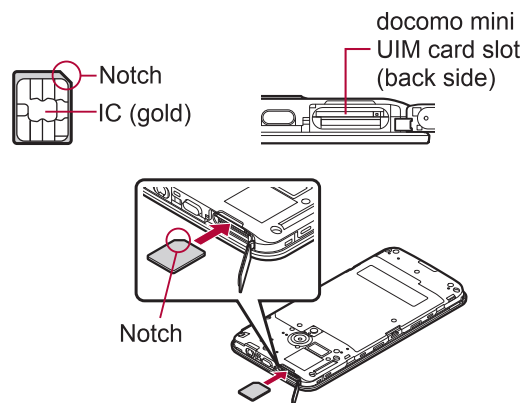
- 1 Open the docomo mini UIM card/microSD Card slot cover

- Hook the tip of a finger into the slot to open.

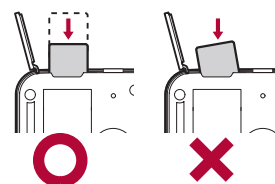


- 2 Hold the docomo mini UIM card with the IC (gold) side turned down and insert it slowly into the docomo mini UIM card slot

- Push it slowly towards inside until a click is heard.

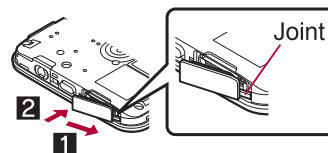


- Do not insert the docomo mini UIM card at an angle or with the wrong side down. The docomo mini UIM card slot may be damaged.



- 3 Close the docomo mini UIM card/microSD Card slot cover

- Stow the joint of the docomo mini UIM card/microSD Card slot cover (1) and push the cover in the direction of the arrow to close it so that gaps are not left between the handset and the cover (2).



## ■ Removing docomo mini UIM card

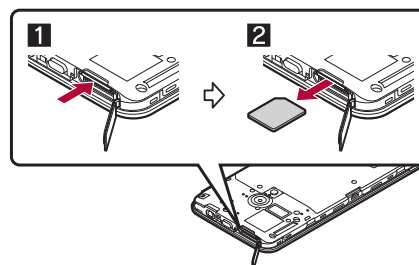
- 1 Open the docomo mini UIM card/microSD Card slot cover

- 2 Gently push the docomo mini UIM card towards inside (1)

- Push it towards inside until a click is heard. It will come out towards you.

- 3 Remove the docomo mini UIM card (2)

- Remove the docomo mini UIM card by slowly pulling it straight out. Do not let it fall.



- 4 Close the docomo mini UIM card/microSD Card slot cover

- Make sure not to touch or damage the IC (gold) of the docomo mini UIM card when handling it. Also, note that inserting or removing the docomo mini UIM card forcibly may damage it.
- Refer to the docomo mini UIM card user's guide for more information on the docomo mini UIM card.
- Do not misplace the docomo mini UIM card once it is taken out.

## Charging

**The internal battery is not fully charged at the time of purchase. Be sure to charge the battery before use.**

### ■ Cautions while charging

- For details on the estimated charge time P. 86 "Main specifications"
- The battery can also be charged with the handset turned on (While charging, the battery icon appears with superimposed).
- Do not charge for a long time with the power left turned on. If the handset is left turned on after charging is complete, the internal battery charge level decreases.  
In this case, an AC or DC adapter (sold separately) charges the battery again. However, depending on the time when the handset is disconnected from the AC or DC adapter, the battery charge level may be low or the battery may only be usable for a short time.
- If the handset is left for a long time even after the charging is completed, the battery level may decrease.
- When the battery is empty and the handset is being charged, the charging illumination may not illuminate immediately. However, charging is in progress.
- If the battery empty alert is displayed and the power cannot be turned on, charge the battery for a while.
- While charging, the handset may not turn on even when the charging illumination is illuminated in red. Charge longer and try turning power on again.
- Frequently recharging the battery when its power is still remaining enough may shorten the usable life of the internal battery. It is recommended to use the battery to a certain level (e.g. after the battery level decreases) before recharging.
- When the battery becomes warm, charging may automatically stop even if the battery has not been fully charged. Charging automatically resumes after the temperature lowers to an appropriate temperature.

### ■ Estimated battery life when fully charged

|                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Continuous talk time     | FOMA/3G<br>Approx. 710 min<br>GSM<br>Approx. 650 min                                                                                                                                                      |
| Continuous stand-by time | FOMA/3G<br>At rest: Approx. 570 hr (Network Mode: LTE/3G/GSM(Auto))<br>GSM<br>At rest: Approx. 450 hr (Network Mode: LTE/3G/GSM(Auto))<br>LTE<br>At rest: Approx. 460 hr (Network Mode: LTE/3G/GSM(Auto)) |
| 1Seg watching time       | Approx. 480 min                                                                                                                                                                                           |

- For details on the battery life P. 86 "Main specifications"

### ■ Internal battery usable life

- Internal battery is a consumable product. Battery life per charge is gradually reduced every time the battery is charged.
- When battery life per charge is reduced to about half of the default time, this means that the internal battery is approaching the end of its usable life. In this case, it is recommended to replace the battery as soon as possible. For details on replacing the internal battery, contact the number listed in "Repairs" (in Japanese only) on the last page or a repair counter that DOCOMO specifies.
- If you watch 1Seg etc. while charging for a long time, the usable life of the internal battery may become shorter than estimated.



### ■ AC adapter and DC adapter

- Refer to user's guide of AC Adapter 03/04 (sold separately) or DC Adapter 03 (sold separately).
- AC Adapter 03/04 covers from 100 to 240V AC.
- The shape of the plug for the AC adapter is for 100V AC (for domestic use). To use the AC adapter of 100 to 240V AC overseas, a conversion plug adapter applicable to your country of stay is required. Do not use a voltage converter for overseas travel to charge the battery.

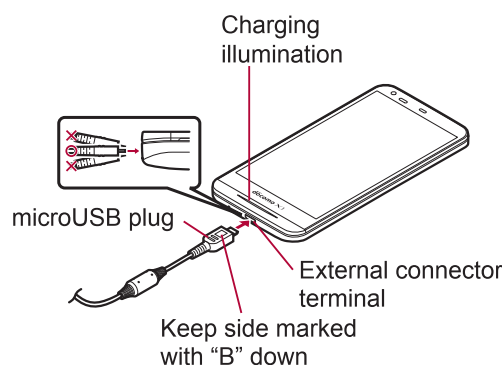
## Charging with AC adapter/DC adapter

**[Read the user's guides of AC Adapter 03/04 (sold separately) and DC Adapter 03 (sold separately)]**

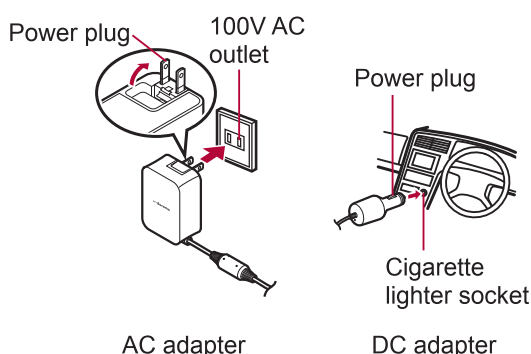
- Following operations describe how to charge with AC Adapter 04 or DC Adapter 03.

### 1 Insert the microUSB plug of the AC adapter/DC adapter horizontally into the external connector terminal on the handset with the side marked with "B" turned down

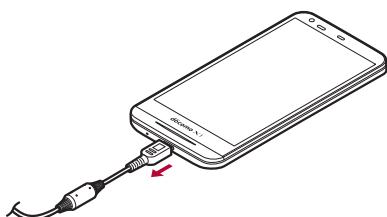
- Check the direction (front or rear) of the microUSB plug and insert it horizontally.



- 2 When you erect the AC adapter power plug and insert it into an outlet or insert the DC adapter power plug into a car cigarette lighter socket, the charging illumination illuminates and charging starts**



- 3 When charging is complete, the charging illumination turns off**
- 4 Remove the AC adapter power plug from the outlet, or remove the DC adapter power plug from the car cigarette lighter socket**
- 5 Remove the microUSB plug of the AC adapter/ DC adapter horizontally from the external connector terminal**



- Do not forcibly insert or remove. May cause damage to the external connector terminal and the microUSB plug or result in a malfunction.

#### When using a DC adapter

- The DC adapter should only be used in negative grounded vehicles (12 and 24V DC).
- Do not use with the car engine shut off. May drain the car battery.
- The DC adapter fuse is a consumable product. For replacement, purchase a new fuse at a nearest auto parts retailer etc.
- Refer to the user's guide of DC Adapter 03 for details.

## Charging with Micro USB Cable 01

When the handset is turned on, you can charge the handset by connecting the handset to a PC with Micro USB Cable 01 (sold separately).

- For details on connecting to a PC P. 74 "Connecting the handset and PC"

## Turning power on/off

### Turning power on

- 1 (for at least 2 seconds)**

- If Google & location is displayed, check the content, follow the instructions on the screen and operate.
- When you turn the power on for the first time, make the initial settings ( P. 20 "Initial setting").

- Precautions about inserting and removing a microSD Card are displayed every time the handset power is turned on.

### Turning power off

- 1 (for at least 1 second) ▶ [Power off completely] ▶ [OK]**

### Turning power off forcibly

You can forcibly turn the power off if the screen does not respond or the power cannot be turned off.

- 1 (for at least 8 seconds)**

- Release your finger after the vibrator is activated to turn the power off. When you keep pressing the key, the vibrator is activated repeatedly.

### Sleep mode

You can quickly activate the handset when turning the power on again by setting the sleep mode.

- 1 (for at least 1 second) ▶ [To sleep] ▶ [OK]**

- Do not set the sleep mode but turn the power off when an airplane you are aboard is about to take off/land, the battery level is low, etc.
- Even if you set the sleep mode, the handset may not be quickly activated depending on its status such as when it has not been used for a long time.

### Turning display on/off

The display is turned off when is pressed or the handset is not in use for a set length of time.

Press while the display is turned off to turn it on.

### Touch panel lock

When the power or the display is turned on, the touch panel is locked.

Touch to unlock.



### Operations in touch panel lock screen

- To set/disable the manner mode: (for at least 1 second)
- To turn on the mobile light: (for at least 1 second)
  - Press any of the keys or touch the screen to turn it off. Press if the display is turned off.
- To activate the camera:

- To activate シャベってコンシェル (Shabette-Concier)/Google: [📞] ▶ select an app ▶ select an activation method
- To add a widget: Slide the left edge of the screen to the right ▶ [+] ▶ select a widget
  - To move a widget: Slide the left edge of the screen to the right ▶ touch and hold a widget ▶ drag it to the destination
  - To delete a widget: Slide the left edge of the screen to the right ▶ touch and hold a widget ▶ drag it to [Remove]

- The status panel can be displayed when Screen lock is set to [Slide or Touch].

#### Mobile light

- The mobile light will automatically turn off approximately 30 seconds after it turns on.

#### Adding widgets

- Unlock the touch panel after you touch [+] when Screen lock is set to an item other than [Slide or Touch].

## Basic operation

### Operation of touch panel

The followings describe the operations to use the display (touch panel).

- Operations may differ depending on the function and screen in use.

#### Cautions when using the touch panel

- The touch panel is designed to be lightly touched with your finger. Do not forcefully press with your finger or a pointed object (fingernail, ballpoint pen, pin, etc.).
- In the following cases, the touch panel may not work even if you touch it. May cause a malfunction.
  - Operation with a gloved finger
  - Operation with the tip of a fingernail
  - Operation with foreign objects placed on the operation pad
  - Operation on the touch panel on which a protective sheet or a sticker is put
  - Operation while the touch panel is wet
  - Operation with fingers wet with sweat or water

- Operations may be interrupted if you touch an area other than a confirmation screen or the status bar while the confirmation screen etc. is displayed.

#### Touch

Touch a key or an item displayed on the screen and then release your finger from it to select or set it.



#### Touch and hold

When you keep your finger on the touch panel, a menu may appear depending on the function and screen in use.

#### Slide/Drag

Move your finger while keeping it on the touch panel to scroll the screen or move an icon, widget, etc. to the desired position. In addition, when you touch a menu or item by mistake, move your finger away from it to cancel the selection.



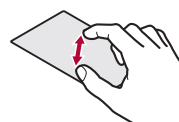
#### Flick

Move your finger like sweeping the touch panel in the home screen etc. to switch pages.



#### Pinch out/Pinch in

You may be able to zoom the screen in/out etc. by putting two fingers on the touch panel and moving them with putting a distance between two fingers apart (pinch out)/closer (pinch in) depending on the function and screen in use.



### Operation while using function

#### Navigation keys

Use the navigation keys displayed at the bottom of the screen to perform the basic operations.



##### 1 [Back/Close] key: Back key/Close key

- Return to the previous screen.
- Close the keyboard.

##### 2 [Home] key

- Display the home screen.

##### 3 [Menu] key

- Display available functions (menus).

##### 4 [Recent Apps] key

- Display Quick Launcher or Recent Apps (📖 P. 25 “Quick Launcher”, P. 26 “Recent Apps”).

#### Using user-aid function

You can quickly activate apps supporting the user-aid function.

##### 1 Slide any of the navigation keys up

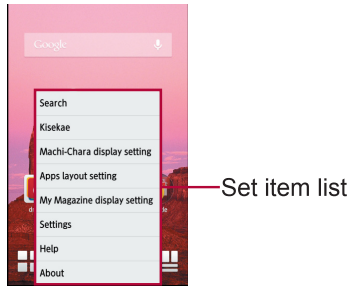
- If you have set the activation method of an app to [Always], the app is activated.

##### 2 Select an app ▶ select an activation method

## Retrieving menu

When you touch [≡] or touch and hold the screen, functions (menus) available in that screen appear.

### Example: Home screen

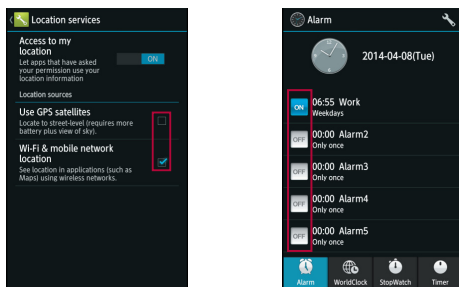


## Switching the settings

When a check box is displayed beside the setting item, you can set it enabled/disabled or [ON]/[OFF] by touching it.

### Example: Location services screen, Alarm screen

- [✓]: Enabled, [ ]: Disabled



## Vertical/Horizontal display

The screen display is switched when you tilt the handset.

- Vertical/Horizontal display may not be switched even if the handset is turned depending on the screen being displayed.
- Vertical/Horizontal display is not switched if the handset is turned in the place parallel to the ground.
- The screen display may not be switched properly when a sound or a vibration is being activated.
- Vertical/Horizontal display may not be switched properly right after the screen or power is turned on.
- You can set the display not to automatically switch (☞ P. 60 “Display”).
- Screens may be displayed in the full screen depending on the app when switching the vertical display to the horizontal display.

## Shooting screenshot

Hold [Power] + [Volume Down] down for at least 1 second to save the screen being displayed to the handset memory.

- The shutter sounds when shooting a screenshot.
- You can check the saved screenshots by using Album etc.

- Data cannot be saved while displaying 1Seg, home network, e-books, etc.
- Data may not be saved completely or partially depending on the app.

## Sweep ON/Shake OFF

### Sweep ON

Slide the touch panel with a finger while the display is turned off to turn the display on.

- Enable [Sweep ON] of Screen on/off with motion in advance (☞ P. 60 “Display”).

- If the proximity sensor is covered with a hand, an object, etc., the display cannot be operated by touching to prevent inadvertent operations although the display is turned on. Also, the display may be turned off regardless of the setting of the handset.

### Shake OFF

Shake the handset from side to side to turn the display off.

- Enable [Shake OFF] of Screen on/off with motion in advance (☞ P. 60 “Display”).

## Searching information on the handset and websites

### 1 In the home screen, [Google] ▶ [Google]

- If the confirmation screen for Google Now is displayed, check the content, follow the instructions on the screen and operate.
- Quick search box appears.

### 2 Enter the keyword



#### 1 Search box

- Enter the keyword to search with.
- When the keyword is entered, apps, data, etc. whose names start with the entered characters are searched and displayed as a list.

#### 2 Switch to Voice Search

### 3 Select the search result

- When a search result is an app, the corresponding app is activated.
- If [Images] etc. is displayed, you can search by selecting a genre.
- When you cannot see search results hidden behind the keyboard, touch [✓] to close the keyboard.

## Search settings

### 1 In the quick search box, [≡] ▶ [Settings]

### 2 Select an item

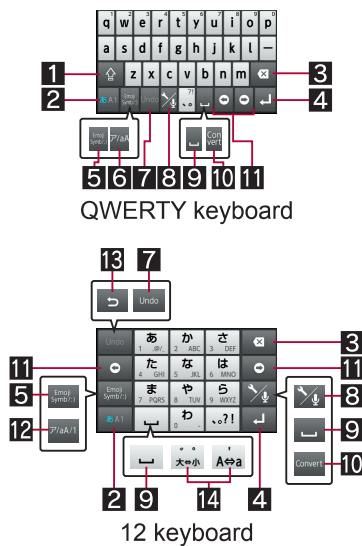
- **Voice:** Make settings for the voice input.
- **Phone search:** Set the range for subjects to search.
- **Privacy & accounts:** Make settings for the privacy and accounts such as histories and Location services.

## Character entry

## Keyboard layouts

- Following operations describe how to enter characters by using iWnn IME - SH edition.
- You can use the following two types of the keyboards.

|                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|-----------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| QWERTY keyboard | You can enter a displayed character by touching the character entry key. Use romaji for entry.                                                                                                                                                                |
| 12 keyboard     | Several characters are assigned to one character entry key. Characters are switched every time the key is touched. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● You can enter characters by flicking a character entry key up/down or to the left/right.</li></ul> |



※ Each key may change depending on the settings and the condition.

### 1 Shift key

- Touch to switch between upper/lower case letters etc.
- When [⇐] is displayed, lower case letters are entered. When [⇐] is displayed, the first letter to be entered becomes upper case one. When [⇐] is displayed, upper case letters are entered.
- Symbols that can be entered change when you switch the upper/lower case letters.

### 2 Input mode switching key

- Touch to switch input modes.
- Touch it to switch input modes in the order of half-width alphabet → half-width numeric → hiragana/kanji. The keyboard set in each input mode is displayed.
- Alternatively, slide the input mode switching key to the right to switch input modes.

### 3 Delete key

- Delete characters displayed in a direction set in Delete key behavior.

### 4 Enter key

- Insert a line feed.
- Determine the entered characters.
- Execute operations entered in an entry field such as the search box.
- Move to the next entry field.
- Touch and hold to close the keyboard.

### 5 Symbol key

- Use to display the pictogram/Deco-mail pictogram/symbol/emoticon list.
- You cannot enter these symbols in some apps.
- Slide it to the right to display Quote apps list.

### 6 Katakana and alphabet key

- Display katakana of the entered characters or normal conversion candidates (katakana and alphabet conversion candidates) of alphabets or symbols assigned to a touched key.
- Slide it to the right to display Quote apps list.

### 7 Undo key

- Use to undo previous operation.

### 8 Setting key

- Display setting menu.

### 9 Space key

- Enter a space.

### 10 Normal conversion key

- Execute the normal conversion of the input characters.

### 11 Cursor key

- Use to move the cursor or to change the range of characters to be converted.

### 12 Katakana and alphanumeric key

- Display katakana of the entered characters or normal conversion candidates (katakana and alphanumeric conversion candidates) of alphanumerics or symbols assigned to a touched key.
- Slide it to the right to display Quote apps list.

### 13 Reverse toggle key

- Use to display characters assigned to the same key in the inverse order.

### 14 Character switching key

- Touch to switch the upper/lower case letters.
- Touch to add dakuten/handakuten.

## Switching keyboards

**Example: In hiragana/kanji entry mode on vertical display**

- In the character entry screen, [⇐] ▶ [Change input UI] ▶ [Set QWERTY keyboard [あいう [Kanji]]] [Portrait]]/[Set 12 keyboard [あいう [Kanji]]] [Portrait]]**
  - Alternatively, slide the setting key up to switch keyboards.

## Setting character entry

- Following operations describe how to enter characters by using iWnn IME - SH edition.

## Sound/Vibration

- In the character entry screen, [⇐] ▶ [Change settings] ▶ [Sound / Vibration]**

### 2 Select an item

- **Sound on key press:** Set whether to enable operation sounds of entering characters.
- **Vibrate on key press:** Set whether to activate the vibrator when entering characters.

## Display/Layout

- In the character entry screen, [⇐] ▶ [Change settings] ▶ [Display / Layout]**

### 2 Select an item

- **Keyboard layout:** Set the keyboard size and the number of lines of the conversion candidates field for the portrait display.
- **Emoji/Symbol list rows:** Set the number of columns of pictograms list/symbols list.
- **Keyboard image:** Set the design of the keyboard.
- **Key input guide:** Set whether to zoom in the selected key and to display the guide of flick input.

## Input assistance

- In the character entry screen, [⇐] ▶ [Change settings] ▶ [Input assistance]**

### 2 Select an item

- **Flick sensitivity:** Set the sensitivity of the keyboard when selecting characters with flick input.
- **Toggle input:** Set whether to use the toggle input while flick input is enabled.
- **Voice input provider:** Set where to connect when using the voice input.
- **Delete key behavior:** Set the operations of the delete key.
- **Romaji input assistance:** Set to prevent unnecessary keys from being touched when entering Japanese with romaji.
- **Auto cursor move:** Set the speed for the cursor to automatically move to the right edge after entering characters.

- **Emoji/Symb/:) continuous input:** Set whether to keep the pictogram/symbol/emoticon list displayed after selecting a candidate from it.

#### [Delete key behavior]

- When the cursor is on a character, delete the character. When [Left-delete (Backspace)] is set and the cursor is at the beginning of a text, you can delete characters on the right side of the cursor. When [Right-delete (Clear)] is set and the cursor is at the end of a text, you can delete characters on the left side of the cursor.

### ■ Conversion

#### 1 In the character entry screen, [📄] ▶ [Change settings] ▶ [Conversion]

#### 2 Select an item

- **Word prediction:** Set whether to use the predictive conversion.
- **Next word guess:** Display relational predictive conversion candidates immediately after an entry is determined.
- **Wildcard prediction:** Set whether to use the wildcard prediction.
- **Typing error correction:** Set Typing error correction.
- **Beginning prediction for mail:** Display text candidates to use at the beginning of a message when entering the message for a mail.
- **Extra conversion engine:** Display conversion candidates by using an external conversion engine.
- **Auto capitalization:** In half-width alphabet entry, enter an initial character at the head of a text with upper case one.
- **Auto space input:** In half-width alphabet entry, automatically insert a half-width space after selecting an English word.

#### [Auto capitalization]

- Auto capitalization may not follow the setting depending on the app in use.

### ■ Dictionary

#### 1 In the character entry screen, [📄] ▶ [Change settings] ▶ [Dictionary]

#### 2 Select an item

- **User dictionary:** Edit words in the user dictionary.
- **Download dictionary:** Register/Cancel/Delete downloaded dictionaries.
- **Update conversion dictionary:** Update, download or uninstall conversion dictionaries.
- **Contacts name collaboration:** Add name data of the phonebook to the dictionary or reset the name data in the dictionary.

### ■ Slide operation

#### 1 In the character entry screen, [📄] ▶ [Change settings] ▶ [Slide operation]

#### 2 Select an item

- **Upward slide:** Set the operations available when you slide the keyboard from its bottom to top.
- **Downward slide:** Set the operations available when you slide the keyboard from its top to bottom.
- **Rightward slide:** Set the operations available when you slide the keyboard from its left edge to right edge.
- **Leftward slide:** Set the operations available when you slide the keyboard from its right edge to left edge.

### ■ Reset

#### 1 In the character entry screen, [📄] ▶ [Change settings] ▶ [Reset]

#### 2 Select an item

- **Set the default settings:** Reset the settings of iWnn IME - SH edition.
- **Clear learning dictionary:** Reset the learning dictionary.
- **Reset facemark list:** Reset the contents of the emoticon list.

## Entering characters

- Following operations describe how to enter characters by using iWnn IME - SH edition.

### Example: When entering “文字”

#### 1 In the character entry screen, enter “もじ”



#### 1 Enlarge/Reduce

- Enlarge/Reduce the predictive conversion candidates field.

#### 2 Predictive conversion candidates field

- Predictive conversion candidates are displayed. Touch one of them to enter.
- If you set an external conversion engine, [Extra conv] is displayed. Touch it to display conversion candidates searched by the external conversion engine.

#### 2 [Convert]

#### 3 In the conversion candidates field, select “文字”



#### 1 Range reduction/Range enlargement

- You can reduce/enlarge the range of characters to convert.
- Displayed only when available.

#### 2 Close

- Close the conversion candidates field.

#### 3 Conversion candidates field

- Touch one of conversion candidates to enter.
- If you set an external conversion engine, [Extra conv] is displayed among the predictive/normal conversion candidates. Touch it to display conversion candidates searched by the external conversion engine.

#### 4 Determine

- Determine the conversion.

#### 5 Predictive conversion

- Predictive conversion candidates are displayed in the conversion candidates field.

## 6 Normal conversion

- Normal conversion candidates are displayed in the conversion candidates field.

## 7 Katakana and alphanumeric

- Katakana and alphanumeric conversion candidates are displayed in the conversion candidates field.

## ■ Wildcard prediction

Conversion candidates are predicted according to the number of the entered characters and appear.

- Enable [Wildcard prediction] in advance (☞ P. 19 “Conversion”).
- This function is available in the hiragana/kanji entry mode and the half-width alphabet entry mode.

**Example: When entering “アナウンス”**

### 1 In the character entry screen, enter “あな”

### 2 [☞] ▶ [☞] ▶ [☞]

- Each time you touch [☞], [\*] is entered and the predictive conversion candidates appear according to the number of characters.

### 3 In the conversion candidates field, select “アナウンス”

## ■ Inputting kuten codes

You can use four-digit kuten codes assigned to each character for entering kanji, hiragana, katakana, symbol, alphanumeric characters, etc.

### 1 In the character entry screen, [☞] ▶ [Change input mode] ▶ [Character Code]

### 2 Input a kuten code

- After the fourth digit is entered, the corresponding character appears.
- After the fourth digit is entered, the entry mode is switched to the previous entry mode.

## ■ Inputting with voices

You can enter characters with voices.

### 1 In the character entry screen, [☞] ▶ [Change input UI] ▶ [Set Voice Input]

- Alternatively, slide the setting key to the right while the QWERTY keyboard is used or slide the setting key down while the 12 keyboard is used to switch to the voice input.

### 2 Speak to the microphone

- In the following cases, the voice input may not work properly.

- When the voice is too loud
- When the surrounding noise is big
- When the phonation is not clear
- When the phonation is not natural
- When the pronunciation is too fast
- When any key is pressed or the microphone is touched

## ■ Editing texts

You can perform operations such as cutting, copying or pasting by selecting the entered characters.

### 1 Touch and hold the entered characters

### 2 Edit the characters

- To specify the selection range: Drag [☞]/[☞]
- To display the history of cut and copied characters: [☞] ▶ [Quote apps (Mushroom)] ▶ [Copy History SH]



#### 1 Select all

- Select all the entered characters.

#### 2 Cut

- Cut the selected characters.

#### 3 Copy

- Copy the selected characters.

#### 4 Paste

- Paste the cut or copied characters.
- Alternatively, touch and hold the character entry field ▶ [PASTE] to paste them.
- Touch and hold the character entry field ▶ [CLIPBOARD] ▶ select characters to enter to paste them from among the history.

- Up to ten histories of cut and copied characters can be saved.
- If the number of histories of cut and copied characters exceeds the maximum number to be saved, they are deleted from the oldest one.

## Changing screen display to English

### 1 In the home screen, [☞] ▶ [設定] (Settings) ▶ [言語と文字入力] (Language & input) ▶ [言語 (Language)を選択] (Select language) ▶ [English]

## Initial setting

When you turn the power on for the first time, you need to make the initial settings.

## ■ Initial settings

### 1 When the initial setting screen is displayed, [Next]

- Alternatively, in the home screen, [☞] ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Useful] ▶ [Initial setting] ▶ [Next] to make the initial settings.

### 2 Make the initial settings

- Follow the instructions on the screen and operate after this step. The following items can be set.
  - Profile settings (☞ P. 59 “Profile”)
  - Google account (☞ P. 22 “Setting up Google account etc.”)
  - Location (☞ P. 63 “Location services”)
  - Wi-Fi settings (☞ P. 21 “Wi-Fi settings”)

## ■ Initial settings for docomo service

### 1 When the initial setting screen for docomo service is displayed, [Next]

### 2 Make the initial settings

- Follow the instructions on the screen and operate after this step. The following items can be set.
  - docomo ID setting

- Wi-Fi app usage setting
- Set docomo apps password and Remote Initialization Service
- docomo cloud settings
- Application set up
- Set availability of location providing

## Setting an access point

An access point (sp-mode) for Internet connection is registered by default. You can add other access points and change them if necessary.

If you want to use mopera U or Business mopera Internet, add an access point of either provider manually.

For details on mopera U, refer to the mopera U website.

### ■ Checking an access point in use

- 1 In the home screen, [⌘] ▶ [Settings] ▶ [More...] ▶ [Mobile networks] ▶ [Access Point Names]

### ■ Setting additional access points

- Never set the MCC to a figure other than 440 or the MNC to a figure other than 10. They do not appear on the screen.

- 1 In the home screen, [⌘] ▶ [Settings] ▶ [More...] ▶ [Mobile networks] ▶ [Access Point Names] ▶ [⌘] ▶ [New APN]
- 2 [Name] ▶ enter the name of the network profile to create ▶ [OK]
- 3 [APN] ▶ enter the access point name ▶ [OK]
- 4 Enter other items required by network operators ▶ [⌘] ▶ [Save]

- If the settings of MCC and MNC are changed and they do not appear on the screen, reset the settings or set the access point manually.

## Resetting an access point

Reset an access point to default setting.

- 1 In the home screen, [⌘] ▶ [Settings] ▶ [More...] ▶ [Mobile networks] ▶ [Access Point Names] ▶ [⌘] ▶ [Reset to default]

- When sp-mode is not subscribed or if you failed to make automatic setting of an access point due to signal status such as outside the service area, you are required to set the access point again manually.

## sp-mode

sp-mode is an ISP owned by NTT DOCOMO for the Smartphone. In addition to the Internet connection, mail service with the same address you use on i-mode (@docomo.ne.jp) or other services are available. sp-mode is a paid service that requires subscription. For details on sp-mode, refer to the DOCOMO website.

## Wi-Fi settings

If you use Wi-Fi function of the handset, you can use mail or Internet by connecting to your home, corporate network or access points of public wireless LAN service.

### The radio interference with Bluetooth devices

- Wireless LANs (IEEE 802.11b/g/n) use the same frequency band (2.4 GHz) as Bluetooth devices. Therefore, using the wireless LAN device near a Bluetooth device may cause radio interference, lowering of communication speed, noise or connection failure. In this case, turn off the Bluetooth device or keep the handset and the wireless LAN device at least approximately 10 m away from the Bluetooth device.

- Packet communication is also available while Wi-Fi is set to [ON]. Wi-Fi connection is prioritized while Wi-Fi connection is set, but the connection is automatically switched to that of LTE/3G/GPRS network once Wi-Fi connection is terminated. Note that packet communication charges may be incurred in this case.
- Refer to the manual of your wireless LAN base unit when using the access point at home etc.
- Operate access point registration near the access point.
- If you use the docomo service/docomo cloud by using Wi-Fi function, set a docomo ID in advance. In the home screen, [⌘] ▶ [Settings] ▶ [docomo service/cloud] ▶ [docomo ID設定] (Set docomo ID) to set it.

- 1 In the home screen, [⌘] ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Wi-Fi]

- 2 Slide [OFF] to the right

- 3 Select an access point

- If you select an access point protected by security, enter the password (security key) and select [Connect].
- To register access points manually: [ADD NETWORK] ▶ enter the network SSID ▶ set security ▶ [Save]
- WPS compatible access points can be easily registered. In the home screen, [⌘] ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Wi-Fi] ▶ [EASY SETTINGS] ▶ [WPS Push Button]/[WPS Pin Entry] to register an access point.
- Alternatively, in the home screen, [⌘] ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Wi-Fi] ▶ [EASY SETTINGS] ▶ [AOSS] to connect to an access point. Follow the instructions on the screen and operate after this step.

- When you select an access point and connect to it with a wrong password (security key), [Avoided poor Internet connection], [Authentication problem] or [Connected (Limited)] is displayed. Confirm the password (security key). When [Avoided poor Internet connection] or [Connected (Limited)] is displayed after entering the correct password (security key), you may not have acquired the correct IP address. Connect to the access point again after confirming signal status.
- The registration process using WPS takes a few minutes. After completion of the registration of the access point, check that the proper connection to the access point is acquired.
- As for the manual registration of an access point, this function supports WEP, WPA/WPA2 PSK and 802.1x/EAP as the security setting.

### ■ Detailed settings

- 1 In the home screen, [⌘] ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Wi-Fi] ▶ [⌘] ▶ [Advanced]

- 2 Select an item

- **Network notification:** Set whether to display a notification icon when an open network is detected.
  - Set it after setting Wi-Fi to [ON].

- **Wi-Fi sleep policy:** Set when to switch the Wi-Fi function to the sleep mode.
- **Avoid poor connections:** Set whether to use the Wi-Fi function only when stable Internet connections are available.
- **Wi-Fi frequency band:** Set the frequency band to use.
- **MAC address:** Confirm the MAC address.
- **IP address:** Confirm the IP address.

## ■ Disconnecting

- 1 In the home screen, [⌘] ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Wi-Fi]
- 2 Select the connected access point ▶ [Forget]
  - Disconnect with the password retained.

## Tethering

**Tethering function that connects Wi-Fi compatible devices or a PC connected via Micro USB Cable 01 (sold separately) to the Internet by using the handset as an access point is available.**

- You can connect up to 11 devices in total at the same time: ten Wi-Fi compatible devices and a PC connected via Micro USB Cable 01.

- 1 In the home screen, [⌘] ▶ [Settings] ▶ [More...] ▶ [Tethering]
- 2 Select an item
  - **USB tethering:** Set whether to use the USB tethering.
    - Check the details of the precautions before use.
  - **Wi-Fi tethering:** Set whether to use the Wi-Fi tethering.
    - Check the details of the precautions before use.
  - **Set up Wi-Fi hotspot:** Make settings for Wi-Fi tethering such as network SSID and security.

### [USB tethering]

- The tethering function is available on Windows Vista, Windows 7, Windows 8 and Linux.
- A microSD Card inserted in the handset cannot be mounted on a PC during USB tethering.
- For details on USB tethering, refer to the following website.  
<http://www.android.com/tether#usb>

### [Wi-Fi tethering]

- While the handset is functioning as an access point, it cannot access the Internet via Wi-Fi connection.
- Make settings for Wi-Fi access points in [Set up Wi-Fi hotspot].
- For details on Wi-Fi tethering, refer to the following website.  
<http://www.android.com/tether#wifi>

### [Set up Wi-Fi hotspot]

- At the time of purchase, Network SSID is set to [SH-02F\_AP] and Security is set to [WPA2 PSK] while Password is set randomly. Change the settings if necessary.

## Setting up mail account

- 1 In the home screen, [⌘] ▶ [Email]
  - Only when an account is not set, the account setting screen appears.
- 2 Enter mail address and password ▶ [Next]
  - Provider information is preset for some mail accounts, and a receiving mail server and a sending mail server are automatically set.
  - When you use an account whose provider information is not preset, it is necessary to set a receiving mail server and a sending mail server manually. For details on those settings, contact the Internet service provider you use.
- 3 Set an account ▶ [Next]
- 4 Enter an account name and your name ▶ [Next]

- The account which is registered first is automatically given priority to normal use. When registering multiple accounts, you can set an account as prioritized one by enabling [Send email from this account by default.] at the time of the registration.
- When the account type is Exchange, entering “¥UsernameDomain” in the “Domain¥Username” area may be required to set a receiving mail server manually depending on the provider to use. Contact the administrator of the server for details.

## Setting up Google account etc.

- 1 In the home screen, [⌘] ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Add account]
- 2 Select the account type
- 3 Set up an account
  - In the home screen, [⌘] ▶ [Settings] to find the added account on the displayed menu.

- When activating the app that requires an account without setting the account, the account setup screen appears.
- Keep a separate memo of the set account and password.

## ■ Deleting your account

- 1 In the home screen, [⌘] ▶ [Settings]
- 2 Select an account ▶ [⌵] ▶ [Remove account] ▶ [Remove account]
  - Operation methods may differ depending on the account.

## ■ Retrieving your Google account password

If you forget your Google account password, retrieve it.

- 1 In the home screen, [🌐]
- 2 Enter “<http://www.google.com/ncr>” in the URL entry field ▶ [Go] ▶ [Sign in] ▶ [Need help?] ▶ follow the instructions on the screen
  - If the URL entry field is hidden, slide the browser screen down.

## Importing/Exporting phonebook

### ■ Importing from docomo mini UIM card

- 1 In the home screen, [⌘] ▶ [docomo phonebook] ▶ [Contacts]
- 2 [⌵] ▶ [Import/Export] ▶ [Import from SIM card]
  - If there are multiple accounts, the screen for selecting to which account to register is displayed.
- 3 Select the contact to import
  - To import all contacts: [⌵] ▶ [Import all]

### ■ Importing from microSD Card

- 1 In the home screen, [⌘] ▶ [docomo phonebook] ▶ [Contacts]
- 2 [⌵] ▶ [Import/Export] ▶ [Import from SD card]
  - If there are multiple accounts, the screen for selecting to which account to register is displayed.
  - If there is only one phonebook data saved on the microSD Card, the data is automatically imported.
- 3 Select the phonebook data to import ▶ [OK]

## ■ Exporting to microSD Card

- 1 In the home screen, [☰] ▶ [docomo phonebook] ▶ [Contacts]
- 2 [☰] ▶ [Import/Export] ▶ [Export to SD card]
- 3 Select the contact to export ▶ [OK]
- 4 [No]/[Yes] ▶ [OK]

## Incoming/Charging illumination

The incoming/charging illumination notifies you that there is a missed call, the handset is being charged, etc. by illuminating/flashing.

| State of illumination | Color   | State of handset                                                                                                                                                                         |
|-----------------------|---------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Illuminating          | Red     | Charging in progress (Battery level is approx. 94% or less)                                                                                                                              |
| Illuminating          | Green   | Charging in progress (Battery level is approx. 95% or more)                                                                                                                              |
| Flashing              | Red     | Charging unavailable                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Flashing              | Rainbow | During an incoming call                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Flashing              | Green   | Call missed                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Flashing              | Yellow  | New mail received                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Flashing              | Blue    | New docomo mail received                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Flashing              | Purple  | Recording with the voice recorder/<br>Sending and receiving data via iC communication or NFC communication/Sending and receiving of data via Bluetooth communication started or finished |

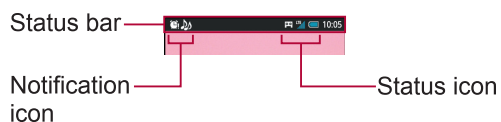
- When the display is on, the incoming illumination which notifies you of missed calls, new mails and new docomo mails does not flash. Check them with notification icons. When notification icons do not appear since you play videos with Media Player on the horizontal display etc., check them on a screen with the status bar appearing.

## Screen display/Icons

### Viewing icons

Icons displayed on the status bar at the top of the screen give you various kinds of information, such as the status of the handset or the presence of missed calls. You can check the detailed information by displaying the status panel.

- Two kinds of icons are displayed.
  - Notification icon: Notifies you of missed calls, new mails, etc.
  - Status icon: Displays the status of the handset such as the battery level or the signal status.



### ■ Main notification icon list

- Some notification icons appear with their number superimposed.

- ☎: Missed call
- ✉: New SMS
- ✉: New mail
- ✉: New Gmail

💬: New instant message

✉: New Area Mail

⚠: Error

- Appears when an error has occurred.

🔑: Authentication of docomo ID setting failed

🚫: Data communication disabled

Alarm

🔔: Alarm sounding/Snooze enabled

🔔: Alarm terminated (without an operation for ending the alarm)

📅: Schedule notification from the calendar

1Seg information

📺 to 📺: Watching 1Seg/Receiving 1Seg

🎙: Recording

🎙: Recording reservation (appears 5 minutes before recording)

🎵: Playing music with Media Player

Calling

📞: Making a call/Receiving an incoming call/Talking on the handset

📞: Putting a call on hold

📞: Answering memo

📞: Voice mail message

microSD Card

💾: Preparing microSD Card

💾: Unmount

🔍: Scanning the handset memory/microSD Card

🔍: Available space on the handset memory being run out

🔒: Omakase Lock set

🔗: [Reader/Writer, P2P] enabled

Bluetooth

📶: Receiving registration/connection request from Bluetooth device

📶: Data reception request

📶: DUN connection request/DUN connecting

USB connection

🔌: USB connection (in Card reader mode connecting)

🔌: MTP mode/PTP mode/Card reader mode

Data transmission and reception

📶: Transmission

📶: Reception

📦: Finished installing app/App update available

Wi-Fi

📶: Open network

📶: Wi-Fi connection restriction

🔌: [USB tethering] enabled

📶: [Wi-Fi tethering] enabled

🔌: [USB tethering] and [Wi-Fi tethering] enabled

🔒: Bright Keep set to [ON (Notify)]

🔑: VPN connected

📶: Android version upgrade available

Software update

🔄: Software update available

✅: Software update finished

⊕: Notification icon (not appeared)

GPS positioning status

📶: GPS positioning

📶: GPS positioning finished

### ■ Main status icon list

🔔: Alarm set

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>Battery level</b></p> <p> to : Approx. 100 to 5%</p> <p>: Approx. 4% or less</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>While charging, the battery icon appears with  superimposed.</li> <li>If [Display left percents of Battery] is enabled, percentage of the remaining battery level appears on the left side of the battery icon.</li> </ul> |
| <p><b>Signal strength</b></p> <p>: Level 4</p> <p>: Level 3</p> <p>: Level 2</p> <p>: Level 1</p> <p>: Level 0</p> <p>: Outside the service area</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>During international roaming, [R] appears on the upper left of the signal icon.</li> </ul>                                                                   |
| <p>: Airplane mode</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <p><b>3G data communication status</b></p> <p>: 3G available</p> <p>: Receiving 3G data</p> <p>: Sending 3G data</p> <p>: Sending and receiving 3G data</p>                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <p><b>GSM data communication status</b></p> <p>: GSM available</p> <p>: Receiving GSM data</p> <p>: Sending GSM data</p> <p>: Sending and receiving GSM data</p>                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <p><b>LTE data communication status</b></p> <p>: LTE available</p> <p>: Receiving LTE data</p> <p>: Sending LTE data</p> <p>: Sending and receiving LTE data</p>                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <p><b>HSPA data communication status</b></p> <p>: HSPA available</p> <p>: Receiving HSPA data</p> <p>: Sending HSPA data</p> <p>: Sending and receiving HSPA data</p>                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <p><b>NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock status</b></p> <p> (blue): Handset or docomo mini UIM card locked</p> <p> (blue): Handset and docomo mini UIM card locked</p>                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| <p><b>Omakase Lock status</b></p> <p> (red): Handset or docomo mini UIM card locked by remote control</p> <p> (red): Handset and docomo mini UIM card locked by remote control</p>                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <p>: [Reader/Writer, P2P] enabled</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <p><b>Character entry mode</b></p> <p>: Hiragana/Kanji</p> <p>: Full-width alphabet</p> <p>: Half-width alphabet</p> <p>: Full-width numeric</p> <p>: Half-width numeric</p> <p>: Kuten code</p>                                                                                                                                                         |
| <p><b>Manner mode status</b></p> <p>: Standard manner</p> <p>: Drive manner</p> <p>: Silent manner</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <p>: Talking with a speaker</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <p>: Mute set</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |

## Wi-Fi signal strength

- : Level 4
- : Level 3
- : Level 2
- : Level 1
- : Level 0

## Bluetooth

- : Connection stand-by
- : Connecting

## Answering memo

- : No answering memo when the answering memo is set
- : One to nine answering memos when the answering memo is set
- : Ten answering memos when the answering memo is set

## Home network

- : Suspending
- (green): Preparing
- (blue): Running

## Using the status panel

### 1 Drag the status bar down

- Alternatively, touch and hold [] to display the status panel.

### 2 Use the status panel



#### 1 Function key area

- Make settings for the manner mode, use of Wi-Fi function, etc. Touch [Rearrange] to rearrange the function keys.

#### 2 Enlarge/Reduce bar

- Enlarge/Reduce the function key area.

#### 3 Detailed information of Notifications/Ongoing

- When there is a corresponding app, touch the detailed information to activate the app.
- Slide your two fingers up/down or pinch out/in to enlarge/reduce the area.
- Some detailed information of Notifications/Ongoing can be deleted by flicking them to the left/right.
- Touch and hold it to display [App info] and check information on the app.
- Touch [Call] to make a call to the other party.
- Touch [Send SMS] to send an SMS to the other party.

#### 4 Detailed information of Status

- When there is a corresponding app, touch the detailed information to activate the app.

#### 5 Close bar

- Drag it up to close the status panel.

#### 6 Settings

- Activate the “Settings” app.

- Touch [] to delete the detailed information of Notifications/Ongoing and notification icons.

## Quick Launcher

You can use app usage histories or the apps/shortcuts set in Favorites to quickly activate apps, or use mini apps/widgets by switching tabs.

- Set Recent apps key to [Quick Launcher] in advance (☞ P. 61 “Useful”).

## History

You can activate apps by displaying the history of recently used apps.

- 1 [📱] ▶ [History]
- 2 Use a history



### 1 App usage history

- Touch it to activate the app.
- Flick it down to delete the history.
- Touch and hold it to delete the history and check information on the app.

### 2 Activation status

- Apps running in the background are displayed in blue while apps not running are displayed in gray.

### 3 Clear All

- Touch it to delete all app usage histories.

● Some apps may not be displayed in the history.

## Favorites

You can quickly activate apps by setting apps or shortcuts in Favorites.

- 1 [📱] ▶ [Favorites]
- 2 Select an app/a shortcut

### ■ Adding apps/shortcuts

- 1 [📱] ▶ [Favorites] ▶ [+]
- 2 Select an app/a shortcut

### ■ Moving apps/shortcuts

- 1 [📱] ▶ [Favorites]
- 2 Touch and hold an app/a shortcut ▶ drag it to the destination

### ■ Deleting apps/shortcuts

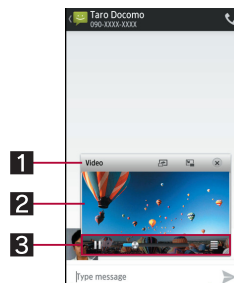
- 1 [📱] ▶ [Favorites]
- 2 Touch and hold an app/a shortcut ▶ [Peel off]

## Mini app/Widget

You can use mini apps and widgets which enable you to watch TV, videos, YouTube, etc. while using another app.

- 1 [📱] ▶ [Mini apps]
- 2 Select a mini app/widget
- 3 Use the mini app/widget

- If the confirmation screen for updating Google Play services is displayed, follow the instructions on the screen and operate.



### 1 Title bar

- Drag it to the destination to move the mini app/widget.
  - The following operations are available with displayed keys.
    - To activate a usual app: [📱]\*
    - To minimize the mini app/return it to the original size: [📱]/[📱]
    - To display the menu: [⋮]
    - To end the mini app/widget: [⊗]
- \* As for Mini TV, Mini Video or Mini Net Video, touch [📱]/[📱] to return it to the mini app.

### 2 Mini app/Widget display

- Touch it to display the title bar and controller when they are not displayed.
- Touch and hold it and drag it to another app such as the “Email” app while the app is running to copy characters, images, etc. and paste them.

### 3 Controller

- The following operations are available with displayed keys.
  - To change the size of the mini app/widget: Drag [📱]

#### Operations on Mini TV

- To select a station with UP/DOWN: [CH ▶]/[◀ CH]

#### Operations on Mini Video/Mini Net Video

- To pause/play the data: [⏸]/[▶]
- To display the data list screen: [≡]

- When you play videos with another app while a mini app is being used, videos may not be displayed properly.

### ■ Adding mini apps/widgets

- 1 [📱] ▶ [Mini apps] ▶ [+]
- 2 [Add mini application]/[Add widget]
- 3 Select a mini app/widget

### ■ Moving mini apps/widgets

- 1 [📱] ▶ [Mini apps]
- 2 Touch and hold a mini app/widget ▶ drag it to the destination

## ■ Managing mini apps/widgets

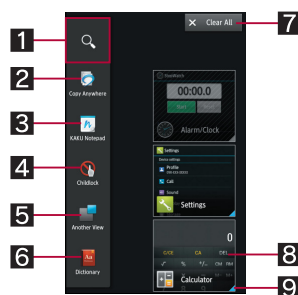
- 1 [📄] ▶ [Mini apps]
- 2 Touch and hold a mini app/widget
- 3 Select an item
  - **Peel off**: Delete the mini app or widget.
  - **Change name**: Change the name of the widget.

## Recent Apps

You can activate apps by displaying the history of recently used apps. Also, you can use user-aid functions and apps/shortcuts such as KAKU Notepad and Childlock.

- Set Recent apps key to [Recent applications] in advance (☞ P. 61 “Useful”).

- 1 [📄]
- 2 Use a history/an app



### 1 User-aid function

- Touch it to quickly activate the apps supporting the user-aid function.

### 2 Copy Anywhere

- Copy characters on a screen being displayed.

### 3 KAKU Notepad

- Create handwritten notes on a screen being displayed.

### 4 Childlock

- Set Childlock to disable operations available by touching or the navigation keys. Childlock is canceled when you press or the display is turned off.

### 5 Another View

- Activate mini apps/widgets (☞ P. 25 “Mini app/Widget”).

### 6 Dictionary

- Activate a dictionary.

### 7 Clear All

- Touch it to delete all app usage histories.

### 8 App usage history

- Touch it to activate the app.
- Flick it to the left/right to delete the history.
- Touch and hold it to delete the history and check information on the app.

### 9 Activation status

- Apps running in the background are displayed in blue while apps not running are displayed in gray.

● Some apps may not be displayed in the history.

## ■ Managing apps/shortcuts

- 1 [📄]
- 2 Touch and hold an app/a shortcut ▶ [🔗]
- 3 Select an item
  - **Select Application or Shortcut**: Set the app/shortcut.
  - **To default**: Reset apps/shortcuts to the default settings.
  - **Peel off**: Delete the app/shortcut.

## Home applications

Switch lock screens or home apps to use.

- The following home apps are registered on the handset by default.

### ■ 3-Line Home

A home app which enables you to find intended apps quickly and operate the handset intuitively. Just by flicking your finger to the left/right, you can choose and use whichever sheet that fits your preferences from among APPS sheet, WIDGETS sheet or SHORTCUTS sheet.

### ■ docomo LIVE UX

A home app optimized for smartphones provided by DOCOMO.

### ■ docomo Simple UI

A home app which is designed to enable customers having been using i-mode mobile phones (feature phones) to use smartphones easily.

- 1 In the home screen, [📄] ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Home applications]

## 2 Select an item

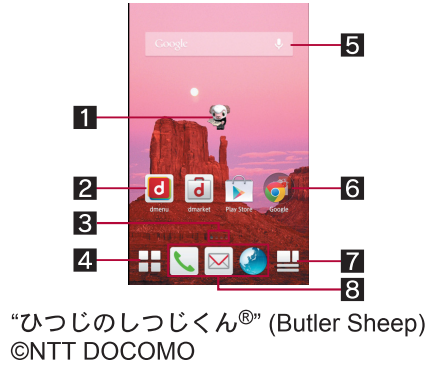
- **Batch change lock screen/ home application**: Switch lock screens and home apps.
- **Home applications**: Switch home apps.

## Home screen

### Viewing home screen

In the home screen, you can activate apps by selecting apps or the quick menu or use widgets.

- If you install a new app, its icon is added to the home screen.



#### 1 Machi-Chara

#### 2 App

#### 3 Indicator

- Indicates the displayed page with [●].

#### 4 Display app screen

- Displays the app screen.

#### 5 Widget

- Use simple functions such as a calendar or pedometer.

#### 6 Folder

- When a folder is added, you can store apps into the folder.

#### 7 My magazine

- Use My magazine (P. 30 “My magazine”).

#### 8 Quick menu

- Quickly activate an app from any page of the home screen.

- You can display the home screen list by pinching in on the home screen.

- Flick the home screen down to display the app screen.

### Managing home screen

#### ■ Setting the home screen

#### 1 Touch and hold the home screen

#### 2 Select an item

- **Show apps**: Displays the Apps tab of the app screen.
- **Show widgets**: Displays the Widgets tab of the app screen.
- **Create folder**: Add a folder.
- **Change Kisekai**: Change the kisekai. For details P. 27 “Changing kisekai”
- **Change wallpaper**: Displays the Wallpapers tab of the app screen. For details P. 27 “Changing wallpapers”
- **Machi-Chara display setting**: Make settings for Machi-Chara.
- **Home screens**: Displays the home screen list.

- Widgets saved to a microSD Card may not be added.

#### ■ Setting quick menu

You can set apps etc. in the quick menu.

- You can set up to three apps etc. in the quick menu.
- Move or delete an already set app etc. in advance before setting new one.

#### 1 In the home screen, touch and hold an app etc.

#### 2 Drag it to the quick menu

#### ■ Moving apps etc.

#### 1 In the home screen, touch and hold an app etc.

#### 2 Drag it to the destination

- If you drag it to the end of the page, the previous/next page is displayed and you can move it to the previous/next page.
- Drag an app onto another one to create a folder storing the two apps.

#### ■ Restoring apps to the app screen

#### 1 In the home screen, touch and hold an app

#### 2 Drag it to [Back to apps list]

#### ■ Deleting widgets etc.

#### 1 In the home screen, touch and hold a widget etc.

#### 2 Drag it to [Remove from Home screen]

- Apps are not uninstalled even if the folder storing the apps is deleted.

#### ■ Uninstalling apps

#### 1 In the home screen, touch and hold an app

#### 2 Drag it to [Uninstall] ▶ [OK]

#### ■ Renaming folders

#### 1 In the home screen, select a folder

#### 2 Touch the folder name

#### 3 Enter a folder name

### Changing kisekai

#### 1 In the home screen, [≡] ▶ [Kisekai]

#### 2 Select kisekai ▶ [Set]

### Changing wallpapers

#### 1 In the home screen, [≡] ▶ [Wallpapers]

#### 2 Select data ▶ [For all screens]/[Just for this screen] ▶ [OK]

- As for [Album] or [Contents manager], select the parts to cut and select [Save].
- As for [Live Wallpapers] or [Wallpaper gallery], select [Set wallpaper]/[Set to wallpaper].

### Managing pages

#### ■ Adding pages

- You can add a maximum of seven pages.

#### 1 In the home screen, pinch in ▶ [ + ]

#### ■ Sorting pages

#### 1 In the home screen, pinch in ▶ touch and hold a thumbnail

#### 2 Drag it to the destination

## Deleting pages

1 In the home screen, pinch in ► [⊗]

## App screen

### App screen layout

Loaded apps that are not added to the home screen are displayed as icons in the app screen. Select an icon to activate an app. Also, you can add widgets and change wallpapers.

- If you uninstall an app, its icon is deleted.



#### 1 App

#### 2 Indicator

- Indicates the displayed page with [●].

#### 3 Home screen

- Part of the home screen remains to be displayed.
- Flick it up to display the home screen.

#### 4 Apps tab

- Displays apps that are not added to the home screen.

#### 5 Widgets tab

- Add widgets to the home screen.

#### 6 Wallpapers tab

- Change wallpapers.

#### 7 Recommends button

- Displays apps recommended by DOCOMO.

#### 8 Menu

- Displays available functions (menus).

### App list

- A separate paid subscription will be required for using some apps.
- The followings are the apps installed by default.

| Icon | App              | Description                                                                                                                                                              |
|------|------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|      | Alarm/Clock      | Use Alarm (☞ P. 52 “Alarm”), WorldClock (☞ P. 53 “WorldClock”), StopWatch (☞ P. 53 “StopWatch”) and Timer (☞ P. 53 “Timer”).                                             |
|      | Album            | Sort images and videos by people, event and location and use them (☞ P. 49 “Album”).                                                                                     |
|      | Anshin Scan*1, 2 | An app to use smartphones safely by detecting viruses, checking apps which deal with personal data, giving you a warning when you try accessing offensive websites, etc. |
|      | Browser          | Display a website using packet communication or Wi-Fi function (☞ P. 41 “Displaying websites”).                                                                          |
|      | Calculator       | Use a calculator (☞ P. 54 “Calculator”).                                                                                                                                 |

| Icon | App                          | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|------|------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|      | Calendar                     | Manage the schedule.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|      | Camera                       | Activate the camera (☞ P. 47 “Before using camera”).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|      | Chrome                       | Display a website using packet communication or Wi-Fi function.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|      | Contents Manager             | Manage data stored on the handset memory and the microSD Card (☞ P. 69 “Contents Manager”).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|      | Disaster kit                 | An app to check received mails and make various settings for Early Warning “Area Mail”, register and check messages in the Disaster Message Board, etc.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|      | dmarket*1                    | An app to activate dmarket. In dmarket, you can purchase contents such as music, videos and books. Also, it introduces apps provided on Google Play (☞ P. 43 “dmarket”).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|      | dmenu*1                      | A shortcut app to “dmenu”. In dmenu, you can easily search enjoyable and convenient contents exclusively dedicated to smartphones as well as the contents used in i-mode (☞ P. 43 “dmenu”).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|      | docomo backup                | An app to back up/restore data to/from “Data Storage Box (docomo cloud)” or “microSD Card”. You can back up or restore call logs etc. to/from Data Storage Box and data such as phonebooks to/from a microSD Card. For details on backing up/restoring data to/from Data Storage Box ☞ P. 57 “docomo backup (Backing up to/Restoring from Data Storage Box)”, and for details on backing up/restoring data to/from a microSD Card ☞ P. 58 “docomo backup (Backing up to/Restoring from a microSD Card)” |
|      | docomo mail*1, 2             | An app to send and receive mails using mail address of DOCOMO (@docomo.ne.jp). Same mails can be viewed from multiple devices and mail data can be easily transferred when you change models, since sent and received mails are saved on cloud computing. Also, pictograms and Deco-mail are available. Automatic reception is also supported (☞ P. 37 “docomo mail”).                                                                                                                                  |
|      | docomo phonebook             | Use the phonebook (☞ P. 34 “Adding contacts to phonebook”).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|      | docomo Wi-Fi Easy Connection | An app to use the public wireless LAN service “docomo Wi-Fi” provided by DOCOMO conveniently. You can automatically connect to Wi-Fi in the Wi-Fi area. Also, you can search for Wi-Fi areas.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|      | Downloads                    | Manage data such as images downloaded from websites.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|      | Drive                        | Save images, videos, etc. on Google Drive or share them.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|      | Email                        | Use Email (☞ P. 38 “Email”).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |

| Icon                                                                               | App                                 | Description                                                                                                                                                   |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|     | Gmail                               | Use Gmail (☞ P. 39 “Gmail”).                                                                                                                                  |
|    | Google                              | Use quick search box (☞ P. 17 “Searching information on the handset and websites”).                                                                           |
|    | Google Settings                     | Make settings for various Google services, such as accessing Google+ and apps which link up with Google+, collectively.                                       |
|    | Google+                             | Use Google+ (Photos, Communities, Locations, Hangouts, Events, etc.).                                                                                         |
|    | Hanashite Hon'yaku                  | An app to translate your messages into the language the other party speaks. You can enjoy communication with other people who speak a different language.     |
|    | Hangouts                            | Use Hangouts (☞ P. 52 “Hangouts”).                                                                                                                            |
|    | IC Tag/Barcode Reader               | An app to read IC tags and bar codes.                                                                                                                         |
|    | iDアプリ (iD appli)* <sup>1</sup>      | An app to make the settings for using electronic money iD etc. (☞ P. 58 “iD appli”)                                                                           |
|    | Instruction Manual* <sup>1, 2</sup> | Instruction manual for the handset. You can also activate the functions that you want to use directly from the explanations on the manual.                    |
|    | i コンシェル (i-concier)* <sup>1</sup>   | An app to use i-concier. i-concier is a service to have your mobile phone support your life like a “butler” or a “concierge”.                                 |
|   | i チャンネル (i-channel)* <sup>1</sup>   | An app to automatically deliver latest information in nine various genres such as weather, news, entertainment/sports and fortune-telling to the home screen. |
|  | Local                               | You can search for facilities near your present location according to genre (☞ P. 52 “Local”).                                                                |
|  | Maps                                | You can measure your present location, use the navigation function to check how to get to your destination in detail, etc. (☞ P. 51 “Maps”)                   |
|  | Media Player                        | An app to play music and videos (☞ P. 50 “Media Player”).                                                                                                     |
|  | Memo                                | An app to create and manage memos (☞ P. 54 “Memo”). The i-concier service is supported.                                                                       |
|  | Messaging                           | Use SMS (☞ P. 37 “SMS”).                                                                                                                                      |
|  | Messenger                           | Enjoy Group Chat in the Google+ circle.                                                                                                                       |
|  | Music                               | Play music.                                                                                                                                                   |
|  | Navigation                          | You can search for a route from the present location to the destination (☞ P. 51 “Navigation”).                                                               |
|  | OfficeSuite                         | Use OfficeSuite.<br>● For details on supported files, in the home screen, [☰] ▶ [OfficeSuite] ▶ [☰] ▶ [Help] ▶ [Help] to refer to Help.                       |

| Icon                                                                                | App                                          | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|     | Osaifu-Keitai                                | Use Osaifu-Keitai (☞ P. 44 “Using “Osaifu-Keitai compatible services”).                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|    | Phone                                        | Use Phone (☞ P. 31 “Making a call”).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|    | Play Books                                   | Purchase e-books, read the purchased e-books or browse samples by connecting to Google Play.                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|    | Play Games                                   | Search for new games or play favorite games.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|    | Play Movies & TV                             | Rent movies or play recorded videos.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|    | Play Store                                   | Use Google Play (☞ P. 43 “Play Store”).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|    | Schedule                                     | An app to create and manage schedules (☞ P. 53 “Schedule”). The i-concier service is supported.                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|    | Settings                                     | Set various settings of the handset.<br>● The same operation can be performed as in the home screen, [☰] ▶ [Settings].                                                                                                                                                           |
|    | SH tool                                      | Use convenient functions such as voice recorder, business card reader, bar code reader and dictionaries (☞ P. 54 “SH tool”).                                                                                                                                                     |
|    | sugotoku contents* <sup>1</sup>              | A shortcut app to “sugotoku contents”. sugotoku contents has standard and popular contents selected carefully and enables you to use contents in a wide range of genres such as weather and news.                                                                                |
|   | ToruCa* <sup>1</sup>                         | Acquire, display, search, update ToruCa, etc. (☞ P. 44 “ToruCa”)                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|  | TV                                           | Use TV (1Seg) (☞ P. 45 “TV (1Seg)”).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|  | Twitter                                      | An official client app of Twitter. You can communicate with other people by sharing short messages on websites.                                                                                                                                                                  |
|  | Voice Search                                 | Search information of websites by voice (☞ P. 17 “Searching information on the handset and websites”).                                                                                                                                                                           |
|  | YouTube                                      | Use YouTube (☞ P. 52 “YouTube”).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|  | 遠隔サポート (Remote support)* <sup>1</sup>        | An app to use “Smartphone Anshin Remote Support”. “Smartphone Anshin Remote Support” is a service that gives you operational support by having the handset screen you are using checked by special staff at a call center remotely (☞ P. 82 “Smartphone Anshin Remote Support”). |
|  | しゃべってコンシェル (Shabette-Concier)* <sup>1</sup>  | An app which gives you best answers by figuring out what you really want to know once you tell the handset “what you want to search”, “what you want to do”, etc.                                                                                                                |
|  | データ保管BOX (Data Storage Box)* <sup>1, 2</sup> | An app to use Data Storage Box. Data Storage Box is a service which enables you to upload necessary files and easily manage them in cloud computing.                                                                                                                             |

| Icon                                                                             | App                               | Description                                                                                       |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | フォトコレクション (Photo Collection)*1, 2 | An app to use Photo Collection. Photo Collection is a free storage service for photos and videos. |
|  | マクドナルド (McDonald's)*1             | Use coupons for McDonald's and the store locator.                                                 |
|  | メーカーアプリ (maker appli)*1           | Connect to SHARP website.                                                                         |

\*1 This is provided in Japanese.

\*2 When you use this app for the first time, you need to download it. Packet communication charges are incurred separately for downloading apps.

- Some of the apps installed by default can be uninstalled. You may be able to download uninstalled apps again from Play Store (P. 43 "Play Store").

## Managing apps

### ■ Moving apps to the home screen

- In the home screen, [ ] ► touch and hold an app
- Drag it to the home screen

### ■ Moving apps

- In the home screen, [ ] ► touch and hold an app
- Drag it to the destination

### ■ Uninstalling apps

- In the home screen, [ ] ► touch and hold an app
- Drag it to [Uninstall] ► [OK]

## Installing recommended apps

Apps recommended by DOCOMO are displayed when you touch the Recommends button of the app screen.

- In the home screen, [ ] ► [Recommends]
  - When you use this for the first time, select [おすすめアプリを見る] (See recommended apps).
- Select an app
  - The screen for downloading the app is displayed.
  - If you touch [おすすめアプリをすべて見る] (See all the recommended apps), the browser is activated and recommended apps are displayed.

## My magazine

This is a search engine to display articles of genres you choose. It helps you set search keywords by guessing your preferences from the history of articles you have read or from information on your profile to make the settings come to match your preferences.

### Setting genres

- In the home screen, [ ]
- Select genres ► [OK]
  - To set genres to display: In the My magazine screen, [ ] ► [My Magazine settings] ► [Display category setting] ► select genres ► [OK]

### Viewing articles

- In the home screen, [ ]
- Select an article
  - To change genres to display: Flick the My magazine screen to the left/right



- Settings
  - Change genres to display or make settings for My magazine.
- Article
  - Display articles.
- See more info
  - Display articles as a list.
- Search

## Information on applications

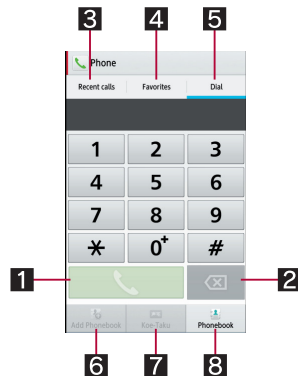
- In the home screen, [ ] ► [ ] ► [About]

## Making a call

**1** In the home screen, [Phone] ▶ [Dial]

**2** Enter a phone number

- Always enter the city code, even when it is a local number.
- You can set to notify/not to notify the other party of your phone number for each call by adding “186”/“184” to the head of the phone number.



**1** Call

- Make a call. Also, if there is an outgoing call history, touch to enter the latest outgoing call history when the phone number has not been entered.

**2** Delete

- Delete an entered number.
- Touch and hold it to delete all the entered numbers.

**3** Outgoing/Incoming call history

**4** Favorites

- Display the contacts set as favorites.

**5** Dial

- Display the dial screen.

**6** Add to phonebook

**7** Koe-no-Takuhaibin

- For details on Koe-no-Takuhaibin, refer to the DOCOMO website.

**8** Phonebook

- Display the phonebook.

**3** [Phone]

**4** [End] to end the call

## Entering touch-tone signals

When using services in which you are required to enter numbers additionally during a call, such as inquiry about the balance in your bank account or ticket reservation, enter pause (,)/wait (;) after entering a phone number to make a call with an additional number added to the main phone number.

### ■ Adding 2 seconds pause

After making a call to a main phone number, the handset automatically pauses for 2 seconds and an additional number is sent.

**1** In the home screen, [Phone] ▶ [Dial]

**2** Enter a phone number ▶ [Add 2-sec pause]

**3** Enter a number to send ▶ [Phone]

### ■ Adding wait

After making a call to a main phone number, the handset automatically waits and then a screen asking whether to send an additional number is displayed. Touch [Yes] to send an additional number.

**1** In the home screen, [Phone] ▶ [Dial]

**2** Enter a phone number ▶ [Add wait]

**3** Enter a number to send ▶ [Phone]

**4** [Yes] during the call

## Emergency call

| Emergency calls    | Phone number |
|--------------------|--------------|
| Police             | 110          |
| Fire and ambulance | 119          |
| Marine emergency   | 118          |

- The handset supports “Emergency call location notification”. When you make a call to an emergency number such as 110, 119, and 118, the information of your location (location information) is automatically notified to the agency that received the emergency call (e.g. the police station). Depending on your location and the reception status of the signal, the agency that received the emergency call may not be able to confirm the exact location. If you are not sending your caller ID by calling with “184” added or other means, your location information and phone number are not notified. However, if the agency that received the emergency call considers your location information and phone number necessary for important purposes, such as life saving, the agency may retrieve them regardless of your settings. In addition, the area/timing to introduce “Emergency call location notification” depends on the state of preparation in each agency that receives emergency calls.
- In Japan, you cannot make a call to the emergency number (110, 119 or 118) when a docomo mini UIM card is not inserted, while the PIN code is locked, from the PUK (PIN Unlock Key) entry screen or from the password entry screen for decrypting the storage.
- When calling 110, 119, and 118 from your handset, the police or fire stations may return your call for verification purposes. State that you are calling from a mobile phone, and give your phone number and exact present location. Remain stationary to ensure that the call is not disconnected while you are on the line, and keep the handset turned on to receive calls for approximately 10 minutes afterwards.
- Depending on the region, calls to the police or fire station of the local area may not be made.
- When you make a call to the emergency number (110, 119 or 118) while Reject call setting is set, items of Reject call setting are set to [OFF].

## International call (WORLD CALL)

**WORLD CALL** is an international calling service available from **DOCOMO** devices in Japan.

- Contact the number listed in “General Inquiries” on the last page for details on WORLD CALL.
- To make an international call through a company other than DOCOMO, contact the respective companies for instructions.
- The caller ID may not be notified or displayed correctly depending on overseas network operators. In this case, making a call with incoming call history is not available.

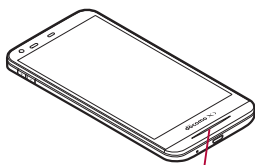
### [Calling Method]

- When calling to a land-line phone: 010 ▶ country code ▶ area code (city code) ▶ the other party's phone number ▶ [📞]
- When calling to a mobile phone: 010 ▶ country code ▶ the other party's phone number ▶ [📞]
- As for the other parties' phone numbers and area codes (city codes) that begin with “0”, omit the first “0” when entering (except some countries or regions such as Italy).
- Alternatively, enter “009130-010” as usual or “+” instead of “010”.

## Receiving a call

### 1 When a call is received, the ringtone sounds and the incoming illumination flashes

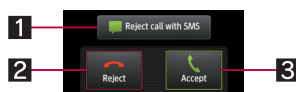
- If you press [🔇] during an incoming call, you can stop the ringtone, vibrator or flash of the incoming illumination.



Incoming illumination

### 2 Receive the call

- Operate after touching [Activate].



#### 1 Reject call with SMS

- You can reject an incoming call and send a selected SMS message to the other party.

#### 2 Reject

- You can reject the incoming call.

#### 3 Accept

- You can receive the call.

### 3 [End] to end the call

#### ■ Placing a call on hold

### 1 When a call is received, the ringtone sounds and the incoming illumination flashes

### 2 [📞] ▶ [On hold]

#### ■ Answering by answering memo

### 1 When a call is received, the ringtone sounds and the incoming illumination flashes

### 2 [📞] ▶ [Absence Memo]

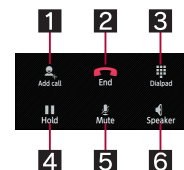
#### Playing an answering memo

### 1 In the home screen, [📞] ▶ [📞] ▶ [Call settings]

### 2 [Call/Ans Memo] ▶ [Answering Memo List] ▶ select an answering memo

## Operation during a call

You can carry out operations such as using a hands-free call and adjusting the in-call volume according to the using condition during a call.



#### 1 Add call\*

- Place a current call on hold and make a call to another party.

#### 2 End

- End a call.

#### 3 Dialpad

- You can enter touch-tone signals.

#### 4 Hold

- Hold/Unhold a current call.
- If you have added a call, [Switch] is displayed. Touch it to switch to whom you talk.

#### 5 Mute

- Enable or disable mute setting on a current call.

#### 6 Speaker

- You can talk with hands-free.
- When a Bluetooth device is connected, you can switch sound emitting parts.

\* Subscription to Call Waiting Service is required.

- Note the following to use hands-free.

- Speak approximately 20 to 40 cm away from the mouthpiece. When the surroundings are noisy, the sound may break up and the call may not be satisfactory.
- When calling outdoors, in a location where surroundings are noisy and where the sound echoes loudly, use an earphone/microphone.
- If the sound breaks up during a hands-free call, lower the in-call volume.

#### ■ Adjusting the in-call volume

### 1 [🔊] during a call

#### ■ Voice memo

### 1 [📞] during a call ▶ [Sound Memo]

### 2 [Stop]

- Operate after touching [Activate].

#### ■ Checking your own phone number

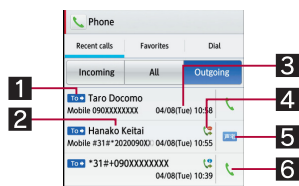
### 1 [📞] during a call ▶ [Profile]

## Outgoing/Incoming call history

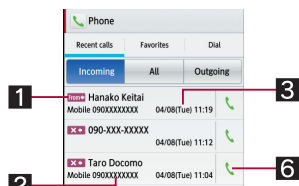
The handset memory keeps a record of the 500 most recent outgoing and incoming call histories in total.

1 In the home screen, [Phone] ▶ [Recent calls] ▶ [Outgoing]/[Incoming]

2 Select a history



Outgoing call history list screen



Incoming call history list screen

1 History icon

|  |                      |
|--|----------------------|
|  | Normal outgoing call |
|  | Normal incoming call |
|  | Missed call          |

2 The other party's name/phone number

3 Date and time of outgoing/incoming call

4 Status icon\*

|  |                                         |
|--|-----------------------------------------|
|  | Outgoing calls with the notification    |
|  | Outgoing calls without the notification |

5 Koe-no-Takuhaibin icon

6 Outgoing call icon

- Touch to make a call.

\* Appears if you add "186"/"184" to the head of the phone number or if, in the dial screen, enter the phone number and [Menu] ▶ [Caller ID notification] ▶ [Notify]/[Not notify] to/not to notify the caller ID.

3 [Call]

- To compose and send SMS: [Send SMS] ▶ compose and send SMS
- To record with Koe-no-Takuhaibin: [Record Koe-no-Takuhaibin]
- To register to the phonebook: [Add Phonebook] ▶ select a destination ▶ set each item ▶ [Save]

## Deleting outgoing/incoming call history

■ Deleting all entries

1 In the outgoing/incoming call history list screen, [Menu] ▶ [Delete all] ▶ [OK]

■ Deleting one entry

1 In the outgoing/incoming call history list screen, touch and hold a history ▶ [Delete from call log] ▶ [OK]

## Voice/Answering memo

You can play or set the voice/answering memo. If you set the answering memo, the handset answers a call and records the caller's message when you cannot answer.

1 In the home screen, [Phone] ▶ [Menu] ▶ [Call settings] ▶ [Call/Ans Memo]

2 Select an item

- **Answering Memo List**: Play or delete answering memos etc.
- **Voice Memo List**: Play or delete voice memos etc.
- **Answering memo setting**: Make settings for operations of the answering memo.
- **Answering message setting**: Make settings for the reply message of the answering memo.
- **Answer time setting**: Make settings for how long before the answering memo answers a call.

- Up to ten answering memos and voice memos (approximately 60 seconds per memo) can be recorded respectively.
- If the number of saved answering memos exceeds the maximum number to be saved, answering memos which have been played are deleted from the oldest one. If no answering memo has been played, the handset does not answer calls by the answering memo.
- If the number of saved voice memos exceeds the maximum number to be saved, they are deleted from the oldest one.

## Call settings/Other

You can make settings for call such as voice mail and call rejection.

1 In the home screen, [Phone] ▶ [Menu] ▶ [Call settings]

- Alternatively, in the home screen, [Menu] ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Call] to set call.

2 Select an item

- **Network service**: For details P. 34 "Network service"
- **Any key answer settings**: Set an action available when you press [Any key] on receiving a call.
- **Quick silent**: Set whether to temporarily stop the ringtone by turning the handset back on receiving a call.
- **Call/Ans Memo**: For details P. 33 "Voice/Answering memo"
- **Roaming settings**: For details P. 79 "Roaming settings"
- **Advanced call settings**: For details P. 34 "Advanced call settings"
- **Call time**: For details P. 34 "Call time"
- **Sound & Vibration settings**: For details P. 34 "Sound & vibration settings"
- **Reject SMS**: Edit texts to use for Reject call with SMS.
- **Contact docomo**: For details P. 34 "Contacting docomo"
- **Open source licenses**: Display the open source licenses.
- **SIP Accounts**: Make settings for an account for Internet call.
- **Use Internet calling**: Set whether to use Internet call.

[Any key answer settings]

- Following items can be set.
  - **Answer**: Press [Any key] on receiving a call to answer it.
  - **Quick silent**: Press [Any key] on receiving a call to temporarily stop the ringtone, vibrator or flash of the incoming illumination.

## Network service

### 1 In the home screen, [Phone] > [Settings] > [Call settings] > [Network service]

### 2 Select an item

- **Koe-no-Takuhaibin**: Record or play voice messages with simple operations.
- **Voice mail service**: A service to answer calls with a reply message and record callers' messages for you.
- **Call forwarding service**: A service to forward calls.
- **Call waiting**: A service to place the current call on hold and answer a new incoming call when receiving a call during another call.
- **Caller ID notification**: Display your phone number on the other party's phone when you make a call.
- **Nuisance call blocking service**: Register and reject phone numbers of "nuisance calls" such as prank calls.
- **Caller ID display request service**: Answer calls without notifications of phone number and play the guidance for asking notifications of the numbers.
- **Second call settings**: Deal with an incoming call during another call by a method determined in advance.
- **Call notification**: Notify you of incoming call information with SMS.
- **English guidance**: Play the guidance for setting each network service and the voice guidance stating that the handset is outside the service area etc. in English.
- **Remote operation settings**: Operate Voice Mail Service, Call Forwarding Service, etc. from a touch-tone land-line phone, public phone, mobile phone provided by DOCOMO, etc.
- **Public mode (power OFF) settings**: Play a message stating that you are in a place that does not allow the use of mobile phone and automatically disconnect the call when receiving a call with the handset turned off.

## Advanced call settings

### 1 In the home screen, [Phone] > [Settings] > [Call settings] > [Advanced call settings]

### 2 Select an item

- **Sub address settings**: Set whether to use "\*" included in a phone number as a separator for the sub address.
- **Prefix settings**: Make settings for the prefix number.
- **Reject call setting**: For details see P. 34 "Reject call setting"

## Reject call setting

### 1 In the home screen, [Phone] > [Settings] > [Call settings] > [Advanced call settings] > [Reject call setting]

### 2 Enter the passcode > [OK]

### 3 Select an item

- **Reject specified numbers call**: Set to reject incoming calls only from the specified callers.
  - To edit a specified number: [Settings] > [Edit] > edit the phone number
- **Reject unregistered call**: Set to reject incoming calls from callers not registered in the phonebook.
- **Reject private number call**: Set to reject incoming calls from callers not notifying their phone numbers.
- **Reject call from pay phone**: Set to reject incoming calls from public phones.
- **Reject unknown call**: Set to reject incoming calls from callers whose phone numbers cannot be notified.

#### [Reject unregistered call]

- Even if you set Reject unregistered call, calls from contacts for whom the secrecy setting is set are received. The name registered in the phonebook does not appear and only the phone number appears.

## Call time

### 1 In the home screen, [Phone] > [Settings] > [Call settings] > [Call time]

### 2 Select an item

- **Cumulated call time**: Display the cumulated call time.
- **Reset cumulated call time**: Reset the cumulated call time.
- **Auto-reset**: Set whether to automatically reset the cumulated call time on the first day of every month.

## Sound & vibration settings

### 1 In the home screen, [Phone] > [Settings] > [Call settings] > [Sound & Vibration settings]

### 2 Select an item

- **Phone ringtone**: Set the ringtone.
- **Vibrate on ring**: Set whether to activate the vibrator when receiving a call.
- **Dialpad touch tones**: Set whether or not to enable dialing sounds.

## Contacting docomo

### 1 In the home screen, [Phone] > [Settings] > [Call settings] > [Contact docomo]

### 2 Select an item

- **ドコモ故障問合せ** (Inquiries to DOCOMO about malfunctions): Make a call for inquiries about malfunctions.
- **ドコモ総合案内・受付** (General inquiries to DOCOMO): Make a call for general inquiries.
- **海外紛失・盗難等** (Inquiries about loss, theft, etc. while overseas): Make a call for inquiries about loss, theft, etc. from overseas.
- **海外故障** (Inquiries about malfunctions while overseas): Make a call for inquiries about malfunctions from overseas.

## Setting start-up screen

You can set the screen displayed when you operate as follows. In the home screen, [Phone].

### 1 In the home screen, [Phone] 2 [Recent calls]/[Favorites]/[Dial] 3 [Settings] > [Set start-up screen]

- The start-up screen may not follow the setting depending on the home app in use.

## Phonebook

## Adding contacts to phonebook

### 1 In the home screen, [Apps] > [docomo phonebook] > [Contacts] > [Register]

- When the confirmation screen for using cloud computing is displayed, check the content and select [Use]/[Not use].
- If there are multiple accounts, the screen for selecting to which account to register is displayed.

## 2 Set each item

- Information which can be registered may differ depending on the account type.



### 1 Image

- Register an image to display when making and receiving a call or checking contacts.

### 2 First name, Last name

### 3 Group

### 4 Ringtone

### 5 Incoming illumination type/color

### 6 Phone number

### 7 Mail address

### 8 SNS - Blog

### 9 Others

- Register information such as the address and organization.

### 10 Add

- Add the phone number/mail address etc. to register.

### 11 Delete

- Delete the phone number/mail address etc.

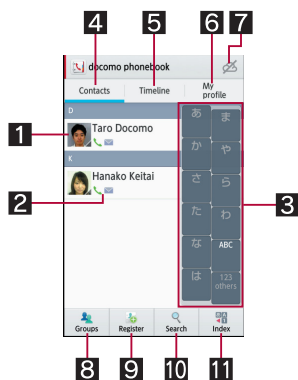
## 3 [Save]

## Checking/Using phonebook

You can retrieve registered contacts from the phonebook to make calls and send mails.

### 1 In the home screen, [App Icon] ▶ [docomo phonebook] ▶ [Contacts]

### 2 Select a name



### 1 Image

- Touch to select and use an app supporting the registered contents of the contact.

### 2 Registered contents

- Registered contents are displayed as icons.

### 3 Index bar

- Move to the touched heading.

### 4 Contacts

### 5 Timeline\*

- Display tweets, messages, etc. from SNSs and blogs.

### 6 My profile

- Display your phone number registered on the docomo mini UIM card.

### 7 Use cloud computing

### 8 Groups

### 9 Register

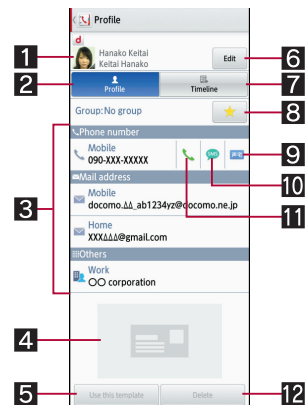
### 10 Search

### 11 Index

- Display the index bar.

\* Displayed only when you are using cloud computing and the My SNS function.

## 3 Check/Use registered information



### 1 Image

### 2 Profile

- Display the registered contents.

### 3 Registered contents

- Check or use the registered contents.

### 4 Business card

- Displayed when you register a business card received by exchanging business cards.

### 5 Use this template

- Create your business card by using the registered business card as a template.

### 6 Edit

### 7 Timeline

### 8 Favorites

- Set a contact as a favorite.
- Check the contacts set as favorites in the [Favorites] group.
- It is not available on contacts created with some accounts.

### 9 Koe-no-Takuhaibin

- For details on Koe-no-Takuhaibin, refer to the DOCOMO website.

### 10 SMS

### 11 Call

### 12 Delete

- Delete a registered business card.

## Selecting accounts to display

### 1 In the home screen, [App Icon] ▶ [docomo phonebook] ▶ [Contacts]

### 2 [Menu Icon] ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Accounts to display]

### 3 Select an item

- To customize an account to display: [Customize...] ▶ select an account ▶ select a group ▶ [OK]

## Deleting phonebook

### ■ Deleting all entries

- 1 In the home screen, [☐☐] ▶ [docomo phonebook] ▶ [Contacts]
- 2 [☐☐] ▶ [Delete] ▶ [Select all] ▶ [Delete] ▶ [OK]

### ■ Deleting one entry

- 1 In the home screen, [☐☐] ▶ [docomo phonebook] ▶ [Contacts]
- 2 Select the name ▶ [☐☐] ▶ [Delete] ▶ [OK]

## Editing phonebook

- 1 In the home screen, [☐☐] ▶ [docomo phonebook] ▶ [Contacts]
- 2 Select the name ▶ [Edit]
- 3 Set each item ▶ [Save]
  - For details on each item that can be set ☞ P. 34 “Adding contacts to phonebook”

## Using groups

- 1 In the home screen, [☐☐] ▶ [docomo phonebook] ▶ [Contacts] ▶ [Groups]
- 2 Use groups



- 1 Group name
- 2 Number of contacts registered in the group
- 3 Group
- 4 No group
- 5 Add
  - Add a group.
- 6 Close
  - Hide groups.
- 7 Group icon

### ■ Grouping/Ungrouping contacts

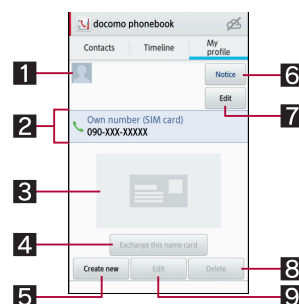
- 1 In the home screen, [☐☐] ▶ [docomo phonebook] ▶ [Contacts] ▶ [Groups]
- 2 Touch and hold a contact ▶ drag it to a group
  - Drag it to the group into which it has already been registered to ungroup it.

- The group function is available on contacts created with a docomo/Google account.

## My profile

You can display your phone number registered on the docomo mini UIM card. You can also register your name, mail addresses, etc.

- 1 In the home screen, [☐☐] ▶ [docomo phonebook] ▶ [My profile]
- 2 Check/Use the profile



- 1 Image
- 2 Registered contents
- 3 Business card
  - Display the created business card.
- 4 Exchange this name card
  - Exchange the registered business cards via a network.
- 5 Create new
  - Create a business card.
  - Download the “Name card creator” app to create a business card. Follow the instructions on the screen and operate after this step.
- 6 Notice
  - Make settings for Friends notice.
- 7 Edit
- 8 Delete business card
- 9 Edit business card
  - Edit the business card with the “Name card creator” app.

### ■ Editing My profile

- 1 In the home screen, [☐☐] ▶ [docomo phonebook] ▶ [My profile] ▶ [Edit]
- 2 Set each item ▶ [Save]

## Backing up/Restoring phonebook

You can back up/restore the phonebook by using docomo backup (Backing up to/Restoring from a microSD Card).

- For details on docomo backup (Backing up to/Restoring from a microSD Card) ☞ P. 58 “docomo backup (Backing up to/Restoring from a microSD Card)”

## docomo mail

You can send and receive mails using mail address of DOCOMO (@docomo.ne.jp). Pictograms and Deco-mail are available. Automatic reception is also supported.

- For details on docomo mail, refer to the DOCOMO website.

### 1 In the home screen, [✉]

- Follow the instructions on the screen and operate after this step.

## SMS

You can send and receive text messages that include up to 70 full-width characters (up to 160 characters for half-width alphanumeric only) with mobile phone numbers serving as destinations.

- You can also exchange messages with users of overseas network operators. Refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]" or the DOCOMO International Services website for information on countries where this service is available and available overseas network operators.

### 1 In the home screen, [☐☐] ▶ [Messaging]

### 2 [✉] ▶ enter a destination and a message ▶ [➤]

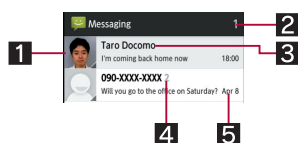
- If destinations are devices of overseas network operators, enter "+", the country code and the recipient's mobile phone number. If the phone number begins with "0", omit the first "0". Alternatively, enter "010", the country code and the phone number.
- Half-width katakana and special symbols in SMS messages may not appear correctly for recipient.
- SMS cannot be sent when "186" or "184" is added.

## Displaying message

### 1 In the home screen, [☐☐] ▶ [Messaging]

### 2 Select a thread

- Messages are grouped into a thread by destination/sender and displayed.



#### 1 Image

- It is displayed if an image of the other party is registered in the phonebook. Touch to select and use an app supporting the registered contents of the phonebook. If the sender is not registered in the phonebook, you can register the person in the phonebook by touching it.

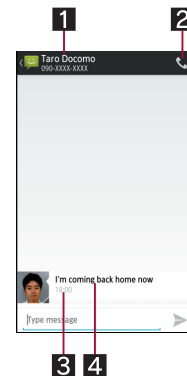
#### 2 Number of unread messages

#### 3 Destination/Sender

#### 4 Number of messages in thread

#### 5 Date and time of the message exchange

## 3 Check the message



#### 1 Destination/Sender

#### 2 Phone call

#### 3 Date and time of the message exchange

#### 4 Message

## Replying message

### 1 In the home screen, [☐☐] ▶ [Messaging]

### 2 Select a thread

### 3 Enter the message ▶ [➤]

## Forwarding message

### 1 In the home screen, [☐☐] ▶ [Messaging]

### 2 Select a thread

### 3 Touch and hold the message ▶ [Forward] ▶ enter the destination and message ▶ [➤]

## Deleting message

### 1 In the home screen, [☐☐] ▶ [Messaging]

### 2 Select a thread

### 3 Touch and hold the message ▶ [Delete] ▶ [Delete]

## Deleting thread

### 1 In the home screen, [☐☐] ▶ [Messaging]

- To delete all threads: [☐☐] ▶ [Delete all threads] ▶ [Delete]

### 2 Touch and hold the thread ▶ [Delete] ▶ [Delete]

## Setting message

### 1 In the home screen, [☐☐] ▶ [Messaging]

### 2 [☐☐] ▶ [Settings]

### 3 Select an item

- **Delete old messages:** When the number of saved messages reaches its limit, messages are automatically deleted from the oldest one.
- **Text message limit:** Set the number of messages to be saved by thread.
- **Delivery reports:** Notify you that sent messages have been received every time a message is received.
- **Manage SIM card messages:** Manage messages saved on the docomo mini UIM card.
- **Notifications:** Notify you that messages have been received in the status bar.

- **Sound:** Set the ringtone to be rung when a message is received.
- **Vibrate:** Set the vibrator to be activated when a message is received.

#### [Delivery reports]

- When you send a message to mobile phones of other carriers, the notification for confirming that it has been received may not be sent to you.

## Email

You can send and receive mails by setting a mail account provided by a service provider.

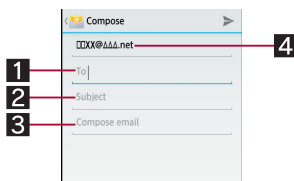
- Set the account in advance (P. 22 “Setting up mail account”).

### 1 In the home screen, [App] ▶ [Email]

### 2 [✉]

### 3 Compose the mail

- To attach a file: [Menu] ▶ [Attach file] ▶ select a file



#### 1 Destination

- When you enter part of a mail address or a name registered in the phonebook, destination candidates are displayed.

#### 2 Subject

#### 3 Message

#### 4 Account

### 4 [➤]

- Some receiving side models may not be able to receive the subject completely.
- Mail sent from a Gmail account is treated as one from a PC. When receiving side models set PC-mail rejection, mails cannot be sent.
- Mail that could not be sent for any reason will be saved in the Outbox as unsent mail.
- Text for recipient may not appear correctly depending on signal status.

#### Attaching file

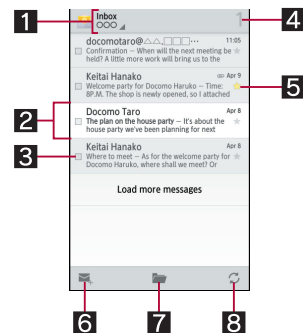
- A mail can include 5 MB worth of file attachments together with the message. There are no limits to the number of files to be attached.
- Depending on the receiving side device, files may not be received or correctly displayed/played. Also, the quality of videos may deteriorate or videos may be converted to continuous still pictures.

## Displaying mail

- The screen may appear different depending on the account to use.

### 1 In the home screen, [App] ▶ [Email]

### 2 Select a mail



#### 1 Folder name/Account name being displayed

- Touch to switch folders and accounts.

#### 2 Unread mail

- The background color of a read mail turns gray.

#### 3 Check box

- Apply the settings for mails to be deleted/unread/read/starred on the checked mails collectively.

#### 4 Number of unread mails

#### 5 Star icon

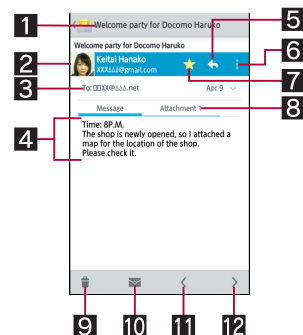
- Use it as a mark indicating that the mail is special or supposed to be dealt with later.
- You can check starred mails in the Starred folder.

#### 6 Newly compose mail

#### 7 Display all folders

#### 8 Refresh

### 3 Check the mail



#### 1 Subject

#### 2 Sender

- Touch the image to select and use an app supporting the registered contents of the phonebook. If the sender is not registered in the phonebook, you can register the person in the phonebook by touching it.

#### 3 Destination/Date and time of reception

- Touch to display the details.

#### 4 Message

#### 5 Reply

#### 6 Reply all/Forward

#### 7 Star icon

- Use it as a mark indicating that the mail is special or supposed to be dealt with later.
- You can check starred mails in the Starred folder.

#### 8 Attached file

- Touch to display the attached file.

#### 9 Delete

#### 10 Unread

- 11 Display new mail
- 12 Display old mail

## Replying/Forwarding mail

- 1 In the home screen, [App Drawer] ▶ [Email]
- 2 Select a mail
- 3 [Reply/Forward]
  - To reply to all: [Reply all]
  - To forward: [Forward]
- 4 Compose the mail ▶ [Send]

## Deleting mail

- 1 In the home screen, [App Drawer] ▶ [Email]
  - To delete selected mails: Touch check boxes ▶ [Delete]
- 2 Select a mail
- 3 [Delete]

## Setting mail

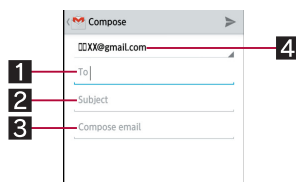
- 1 In the home screen, [App Drawer] ▶ [Email] ▶ [Settings] ▶ [General]
  - Select an account to make settings for the details on each account such as Signature and Email notifications.
  - Touch [ADD ACCOUNT] to add an account.
- 2 Select an item
  - **Auto-advance**: Set a screen to be displayed after a mail is deleted.
  - **Message text size**: Set the font size of mail.
  - **Reply all**: Set whether to reply a mail to all when replying it.
  - **Ask to show pictures**: Disable the settings to have the handset automatically display images in a message.
  - **Confirm before deleting**: Set whether to display the confirmation screen before deleting a mail.

## Gmail

Gmail is a mail service provided by Google.

- Set up a Google account in advance (P. 22 "Setting up Google account etc.").

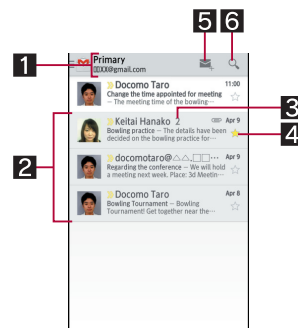
- 1 In the home screen, select "Google" folder ▶ [Gmail]
- 2 [Compose]
- 3 Compose the mail



- 1 **Destination**
  - When you enter part of a mail address or a name registered in the phonebook, destination candidates are displayed.
- 2 **Subject**
- 3 **Message**
- 4 **Account**
  - If you set multiple accounts, you can switch accounts.
- 4 [Send]

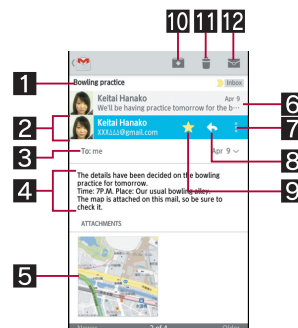
## Displaying mail

- 1 In the home screen, select "Google" folder ▶ [Gmail]
- 2 Select a thread
  - In Gmail, mails are grouped into a thread by reply and displayed. If new mails are replied ones of an existing mail, they are grouped into the same thread. New thread is created for newly composed mails or mails whose subjects have been changed.



- 1 **Label/Account name being displayed**
  - Touch to switch displaying type and accounts.
- 2 **Thread with no unread mails**
  - The background color is displayed in gray.
- 3 **Number of mails in thread**
- 4 **Star icon**
  - Use it as a mark indicating that the mail is special or supposed to be dealt with later.
  - You can check starred mails in the Starred folder.
- 5 **Newly compose mail**
- 6 **Mail search**

- 3 Check the mail



- 1 **Subject**
- 2 **Sender**
  - Touch the image to select and use an app supporting the registered contents of the phonebook. If the sender is not registered in the phonebook, you can register the person in the phonebook by touching it.
- 3 **Destination/Date and time of reception**
  - Touch to display the details.
- 4 **Message**
- 5 **Attached file**
- 6 **Read mail**
  - If the thread has multiple mails inside, touch to check the read mails by displaying their senders, first lines, etc.
- 7 **Reply to all/Forward**
- 8 **Reply**
- 9 **Star icon**
  - Use it as a mark indicating that the mail is special or supposed to be dealt with later.
  - You can check starred mails in the Starred folder.
- 10 **Archive**

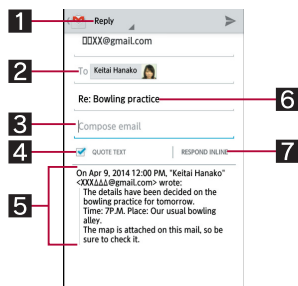
- 11 Delete
- 12 Unread

## Replying/Forwarding mail

- 1 In the home screen, select “Google” folder ▶ [Gmail]
- 2 Select a thread
- 3 [↩]

  - To reply to all: [⋮] ▶ [Reply all]
  - To forward: [⋮] ▶ [Forward]

- 4 Compose the mail



### 1 Reply type

- Touch to switch replying/replying to all/forwarding.

### 2 Destination

### 3 Message

### 4 Quote text

- Touch to switch displaying/hiding messages of the sender.
- You cannot operate it when forwarding mails.

### 5 Mail of sender

### 6 Subject

### 7 Respond inline

- Enter the mail of the sender in the message.

## 5 [➤]

## Deleting thread

- 1 In the home screen, select “Google” folder ▶ [Gmail]
  - To delete selected threads: Touch the images of threads ▶ [🗑]
- 2 Select a thread
- 3 [🗑]

## Setting Gmail

- 1 In the home screen, select “Google” folder ▶ [Gmail] ▶ [☰] ▶ [Settings]
- 2 Select an item
  - **General settings:** Make settings for the whole Gmail.
  - **About Gmail:** Display the Gmail version.
  - Select an account to make settings for the details on each account such as Signature and Notifications.
  - Touch [ADD ACCOUNT] to add an account.

## Early Warning “Area Mail”

Area Mail is an app to receive Early Warning “Area Mail” and check the received Area Mail.

- Area Mail is a service which enables you to receive earthquake early warnings etc. sent from the Japan Meteorological Agency.
- When an Area Mail is sent to you, it is automatically received and the contents of it are displayed whether or not the display is turned on or whether or not Screen lock is set.
- Area Mail may not be received or automatically displayed depending on the condition of the handset.
  - In the following cases, you cannot receive Area Mail.
    - During a call
    - While the power is turned off
    - While outside the service area
    - During international roaming
    - In Airplane mode
  - In the following cases, you may not receive Area Mail.
    - During packet communication
    - During Wi-Fi tethering
    - During USB tethering
    - During software update
    - During Android version upgrade
  - In the following cases, you can receive Area Mail but it may not be automatically displayed.
    - During packet communication
    - During software update
    - During Android version upgrade
- Area Mail is a free service that does not require a subscription.

### 1 Automatically receive an Area Mail

### 2 When the Area Mail is received, the special buzzer or special ringtone sounds and its message is displayed

### ■ Checking received Area Mail later

### 1 Drag the status bar down ▶ select the received Area Mail

- Alternatively, in the home screen, [☰] ▶ [Disaster kit] ▶ [Early Warning “Area Mail”] to check received Area Mail.
  - When the confirmation screen for use appears, check the content and select [Agree].

- You can receive Area Mail without subscription to sp-mode.
- You cannot receive the Area Mail that failed to be received again.
- You can save up to 50 Area Mails.
- If the number of Area Mails saved on the handset memory exceeds the maximum number to be saved, Area Mail is deleted from the oldest one.

## Deleting Early Warning “Area Mail”

- 1 In the home screen, [☰] ▶ [Disaster kit] ▶ [Early Warning “Area Mail”]
- 2 Select a mail
  - To select all Area Mails: [Select all]
- 3 [Delete] ▶ [OK]

## Setting Early Warning “Area Mail”

Whether to receive Area Mail, operations on receiving Area Mail, etc. is set.

- 1 In the home screen, [ ] ▶ [Disaster kit] ▶ [Early Warning “Area Mail”]
- 2 [ ] ▶ [Settings] ▶ select an item
  - **Receive setting**: Set whether to receive Area Mail.
  - **Beep tone**: Make settings for the ring duration and operations in the manner mode.
  - **Check screen image and beep tone**: Confirm the reception screen and the ringtone for earthquake early warning, tsunami warning, and disaster and evacuation information.
  - **Other settings**: Set Area Mail to use as well as earthquake early warning, tsunami warning and the disaster and evacuation information.

- Settings of the earthquake early warning buzzer, ringtone dedicated to tsunami warning and the disaster and evacuation information, ringtone volume and vibrator cannot be changed.

## Browser

### Displaying websites

The handset can display websites over packet communication or Wi-Fi function connection.

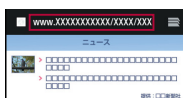
- 1 In the home screen, [ ]

- Some websites may not appear properly.

#### ■ Searching websites

- 1 Touch the URL entry field

- If the URL entry field is hidden, slide the browser screen down.



- 2 Enter the keyword

- Keywords that include the entered characters are displayed as a list.

- 3 Select the keyword

- Alternatively, enter the entire keyword and [Go] to search websites.

#### ■ Opening new tab

- 1 In the browser screen, [ ] ▶ [ ]

#### ■ Switching tabs

- 1 In the browser screen, [ ]

- 2 Select a tab

#### ■ Opening incognito tabs

- When you display websites on an incognito tab, [ ] appears at the top left of the screen.

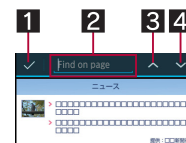
- 1 In the browser screen, [ ] ▶ [ ] ▶ [New incognito tab]

- 2 Touch the URL entry field ▶ enter a keyword ▶ [Go]

- The history of websites opened on an incognito tab is not saved. If you close the incognito tab, the information such as Cookie are also deleted. Downloaded files and bookmarked websites can be saved on an incognito tab.

#### ■ Searching characters in the page

- 1 In the browser screen, [ ] ▶ [Find on page]
- 2 Search



- 1 End search

- 2 Keyword entry field

- Enter the keyword to search with.

- 3 Previous

- 4 Next

#### ■ Copying characters

- 1 In the browser screen, [ ] ▶ [Copy text]
- 2 Drag your finger from the start position to the end position

- To change the copy range: Drag [ ]/[ ]

- 3 [ ]

#### ■ Convenient functions

You can display a link with a new tab or download data such as images.

- 1 In the browser screen, touch and hold a link/an image
- 2 Select a function to use

#### ■ Reloading browser

- 1 In the browser screen, [ ] ▶ [Reload]

#### ■ Ending browser

- 1 In the browser screen, [ ] ▶ [End browser]

## Setting Browser

- 1 In the browser screen, [ ] ▶ [Settings]

- 2 Select an item

- **General settings**: Make settings for the functions related to the whole browser.
- **Privacy & security**: Make settings for the privacy or security such as cache and Cookie.
- **Accessibility**: Make settings for the display such as font size and zoom.
- **Advanced**: Make settings for the details on the browser.
- **Bandwidth management**: Make settings for readings of websites.
- **Quick operation・Labs**: Make settings for Quick toolbox, Quick controls and Full screen display.

## Using bookmark, history and saved page

---

### ■ Saving bookmarks

- 1 In the browser screen, [] ▶ [Add bookmark]
- 2 [OK]

### ■ Displaying websites from bookmarks

- 1 In the browser screen, [] ▶ [Bookmark list]
- 2 Select a bookmark

### ■ Displaying websites from histories

- 1 In the browser screen, [] ▶ [Bookmark list] ▶ [HISTORY]
- 2 Select a history

### ■ Saving pages

- 1 In the browser screen, [] ▶ [Save for offline reading]

### ■ Displaying saved pages

- 1 In the browser screen, [] ▶ [Bookmark list] ▶ [SAVED PAGES]
- 2 Select a saved page

# Apps

## dmenu

In dmenu, you can easily access websites or convenient apps recommended by DOCOMO.

### 1 In the home screen, [dmenu]

- The browser is activated and dmenu is displayed.

- Packet communication (LTE/3G/GPRS) or Internet connection via Wi-Fi is required to use dmenu.
- Packet communication charge is incurred separately for connecting to dmenu and downloading apps introduced on dmenu. Some downloaded apps automatically perform packet communication.
- Apps introduced on dmenu include charged ones.

## dmarket

In dmarket, you can get enjoyable and convenient contents suitable for you.

### 1 In the home screen, [dmarket]

- For details on dmarket, refer to the DOCOMO website.

## Play Store

By using Google Play, you can download and install useful apps or fun games to the handset.

- Set up a Google account in advance (☞ P. 22 “Setting up Google account etc.”).

### 1 In the home screen, [Play Store]

- To display Help: [≡] ▶ [Help]

- Be sure to check the security of app, then install it at your own risk. The handset may be infected with a virus, data may be damaged, etc.
- Note that DOCOMO shall not be liable for malfunctions caused by the app etc. you installed.
- Note that DOCOMO shall not be liable for any disadvantage brought to you or any third party due to the app etc. you installed.

## Purchasing app

### 1 In the Google Play screen, select an app to purchase

### 2 Touch the price

- Follow the instructions on the screen and operate after this step.
- When the app is free: [INSTALL]
- If you make a purchase for the first time, select a payment method. You may need to sign in to your Google Wallet account depending on the payment method.
- You can ask for a refund within a specified time after the purchase of app. The app is deleted and you are not charged. In addition, note that a refund request is available for each app only once. If you requested a refund for the purchased app in the past and purchase the same app again, a second refund request is not available. In the Google Play screen, [≡] ▶ [Help] for details on the payment method when purchasing an app, the terms on the refund request, etc.

- Once you accept the installation of app, you are responsible for the results of using the app. Be very cautious about installation of apps that have access to many functions or a significant amount of data.
- Some downloaded apps automatically perform packet communication. Note that the packet communication charges may be higher.
- You pay for the app only once. Re-downloading apps which you previously uninstalled after first downloading will not be charged.
- If you have multiple Android devices that use the same Google account, you can download the purchased app to all of them at no additional cost.
- DOCOMO holds no responsibility for responding to purchase apps and get a refund from Google Play.

## Uninstalling apps

### 1 In the Google Play screen, [≡] ▶ [My apps]

### 2 Select an app to uninstall ▶ [UNINSTALL] ▶ [OK]

## Osaifu-Keitai

Osaifu-Keitai is a function for using “Osaifu-Keitai compatible services” which enable you to pay, use the handset as coupons, etc. by simply holding it over scanning devices at stores etc. and using “Kazashite-Link compatible services” which enable you to access information by holding the handset over home electric appliances, smart posters, etc. You can save electronic money, points, etc. on the IC card or docomo mini UIM card.

In addition, you can deposit electronic money, check the balance and the remaining points, etc. while you can lock Osaifu-Keitai functions in case of theft or loss.

For details on Osaifu-Keitai, refer to the DOCOMO website.

※ To use Osaifu-Keitai compatible services, settings are necessary on a website or an app.

## Using Osaifu-Keitai compatible handset

- The handset malfunctions may cause data on the IC card\*1 and data on the docomo mini UIM card\*2 to be lost or changed (Note that as a rule, you will be asked to delete data when leaving your handset for repairs etc., since we cannot keep your handset with such data still remaining in it). For the service such as a reissue, restoration, temporary keeping or transference of the data, contact a provider of the Osaifu-Keitai compatible service you use. Be sure to use the Osaifu-Keitai compatible service including a backup service for important data.
- DOCOMO shall not be liable for any loss or change of data on the IC card and data on the docomo mini UIM card or other damages related to Osaifu-Keitai compatible services caused by any reason such as malfunctions and model changes.
- When the handset is stolen or lost, immediately contact a provider of the Osaifu-Keitai compatible service you use for handling methods.

\*1 The data saved on the built-in IC card of the Osaifu-Keitai compatible handset

\*2 The data saved on the docomo mini UIM card

## Using “Osaifu-Keitai compatible services”

- To use Osaifu-Keitai compatible services, download the Osaifu-Keitai compatible app from Osaifu-Keitai compatible websites and make the setting. Some services do not require the download of the Osaifu-Keitai compatible app.

### 1 In the home screen, [ ] ▶ [Osaifu-Keitai]

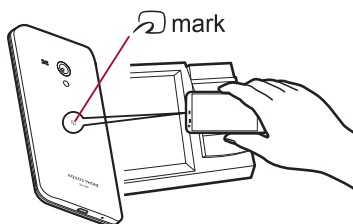
- If the initial setting is not completed, the initial setting screen appears. Follow the instructions on the screen and operate.

### 2 Select a service

- Make settings on the website of the service or after downloading the app compatible with the service.

### 3 Hold the mark of the handset over the scanning device

- The handset can communicate with the scanning device.



- You cannot use Osaifu-Keitai compatible services in the following situations. However, you can pay by holding the handset over a scanning device.
  - In Airplane mode
  - When you are charging the handset, connecting Micro USB Cable 01 (sold separately) to it or connecting an earphone/microphone to it while the docomo mini UIM card is not inserted/When the handset has never received radio wave
- Osaifu-Keitai compatible services are available even if you cannot unlock the PIN code of the docomo mini UIM card or the PIN code is locked.
- If you have not subscribed to sp-mode, you may not be able to use some functions of an Osaifu-Keitai compatible service.

## Using “Kazashite-Link compatible services”

- Enable [Reader/Writer, P2P] in advance (☞ P. 44 “NFC/Osaifu-Keitai settings”).

### 1 Hold the mark of the handset over a device into which an NFC module is built, smart poster, etc.

## Precautions about holding over the other device

- Pay attention to the following points when holding the mark over the other device such as a scanning device or device into which an NFC module is built.
  - Do not let the handset strongly clashed with the other device but slowly bring the handset close to the other device when holding the mark over it.
  - Hold the mark over the center of the other device and in parallel with it. If the other device does not recognize the built-in IC card even when you do so, slightly move the handset away from the other device or move the handset around.

- The other device may not recognize the built-in IC card if there are metallic objects between the mark and the other device. Remove the handset from its cover or case if the other device does not recognize the built-in IC card, since equipping the handset with it may influence the communication performance.

## NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock

You can restrict the use of the functions and services of Osaifu-Keitai by setting NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock.

- NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock differs from Screen lock of the handset and Set up SIM card lock.

### 1 In the home screen, [ ] ▶ [Settings] ▶

[More...] ▶ [NFC/Osaifu-Keitai settings] ▶ [NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock]

- Alternatively, in the home screen, [ ] ▶ [Osaifu-Keitai] ▶ [Lock Settings] to set NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock.

### 2 Follow the instructions on the screen and enter the NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock number

- While NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock is set, [ ] (blue) or [ ] (blue) is displayed on the status bar.
- When the battery runs out while NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock is set, NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock cannot be disabled. Be aware of the battery level. If the battery runs out, disable NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock after charging the battery.
- To use the menu of Osaifu-Keitai while NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock is set, disable NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock.
- The NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock number is not deleted even if you initialize the handset.
- When disabling NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock, insert the docomo mini UIM card which had been inserted into the handset when NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock was set.

## NFC/Osaifu-Keitai settings

### 1 In the home screen, [ ] ▶ [Settings] ▶ [More...] ▶ [NFC/Osaifu-Keitai settings]

### 2 Select an item

- **NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock**: For details ☞ P. 44 “NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock”
- **Reader/Writer, P2P**: Set whether to use the Reader/Writer, P2P function.
- **Android beam**: Perform data communication using Android beam.
  - For details on Android beam ☞ P. 73 “Android beam”
- **Lock No. change**: Change the lock number of NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock.

## ToruCa

ToruCa is an electronic card that can be imported to devices. You can retrieve it as store information or a coupon from a scanning device or websites. Retrieved ToruCa is saved in the “ToruCa” app and you can display/search/update it using the app.

For details on ToruCa, refer to the DOCOMO website.

### 1 In the home screen, [ ] ▶ [ToruCa]

- Packet communication charges may be incurred for retrieving, displaying or updating ToruCa.

- ToruCa provided for i-mode devices may not be retrieved/displayed/updated.
- The following functions may not be available depending on the settings of IP (Information Provider).
  - Retrieving from a scanning device
  - Updating
  - Sharing ToruCa
  - Moving/Copying to a microSD Card
  - Displaying a map\*
- \* A map may not be displayed from the ToruCa list although it can be from ToruCa (details).
- When NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock is set, you cannot retrieve ToruCa from a scanning device.
- When [重複チェック] (Duple check) is enabled, you cannot retrieve the duplicate ToruCa. If you want to retrieve it, disable the setting.
- When you send ToruCa through mail, it is sent in the status that the ToruCa (details) has not been retrieved.
- ToruCa received through mail may not be saved depending on the mail app.
- ToruCa may not be retrieved depending on the browser you use.
- When you move/copy ToruCa to microSD Card, it is moved/copied in the status that the ToruCa (details) has not been retrieved.
- If the initial setting of Osaifu-Keitai has not been made, ToruCa may not be retrieved from a scanning device.

## TV (1Seg)

**1Seg is a terrestrial digital TV broadcasting service for mobile devices and can receive data broadcasting with image and audio. In addition, an interactive service adopting a communication function for mobile devices and detailed information available via communication can be used. For details on the “1Seg” service, see the website below. The Association for Promotion of Digital Broadcasting: <http://www.dpa.or.jp/english/>**

### ■ Using 1Seg

1Seg is a service provided by TV broadcasters (broadcast stations) etc. Communication charges are not incurred for receiving image and audio. Contact NHK for details on viewing fees of NHK. Available information in the area of the data broadcasting is “data broadcasting” information and “data broadcasting website” information.

“Data broadcasting” information is carried by broadcast wave together with image and audio. “Data broadcasting website” information is used to access websites provided by the TV broadcaster (broadcast station).

Packet communication charges are incurred when accessing a website such as a “data broadcasting website”. Some websites require information charges to use.

### ■ Broadcast wave

1Seg is one of the broadcasting services, and the radio wave (broadcast wave) differs from that of Xi service or FOMA service. Therefore, it cannot be received at the place where the broadcast wave does not reach or while the broadcasting is out of service, regardless of whether the handset is outside or inside the Xi service or FOMA service area.

Also, in the following places, the reception status may become weak or the signal may not be received even if the handset is inside the service area of terrestrial digital TV broadcasting.

- Place that is far from the radio tower which sends the signal

- Place where the signal is interrupted due to the landscape or buildings such as mountainous areas or behind a building
- Place where the signal is weak or does not reach, such as a tunnel, basement or an inner area of a building

Move the handset close to or apart from your body or move it to another place so that the reception status may become better.

Also, use 1Seg with Stereo Earphone (sample) connected to enjoy watching/recording 1Seg in better reception status.

## Creating channel lists

**To watch TV, you need to create one or more channel lists and select one in advance.**

- You can register up to three channel lists. You can register up to 12 stations in a channel list.
- Create channel lists inside the area of a terrestrial digital TV broadcasting service.

### 1 In the home screen, [ ] ▶ [TV]

- If the confirmation screen for the license agreement is displayed, check the content and select [Agree].
- Only when channels are not set, the channel list creating screen appears.
- To add a channel list: In the 1Seg watching screen, [ ] ▶ [Channel settings] ▶ [Edit channel list] ▶ [NEW]

### 2 Select an item

- **Create by selecting the area:** Search for broadcast stations set in each area.
- **Create by searching channels:** Search for channels available in the present location.

### 3 [SET]

- You cannot watch 1Seg overseas, since the broadcasting format and the broadcasting frequency are different.

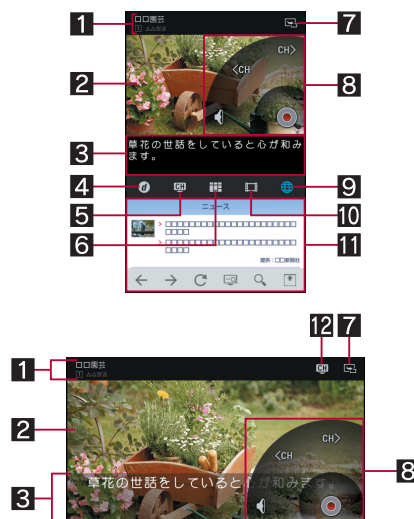
## Watching TV

Watch 1Seg.

### 1 In the home screen, [ ] ▶ [TV]

### 2 Watch 1Seg

- To adjust the volume: [ ]/[ ]



#### 1 Program information

- The program name and broadcast station name are displayed.

#### 2 Image

- Touch it to display/hide the controller etc.
- Flick your finger to the left/right to select a station with UP/DOWN.

#### 3 Subtitle

#### 4 Data broadcasting key

- Display data broadcasting on the information displaying area.

#### 5 Channel switching screen key

- Display the channel switching screen on the information displaying area.

#### 6 Program list key

- Display the program list of the broadcast station whose program you are watching on the information displaying area.
  - Touch a program to display the program details screen. Recording/Watching reservation is also available in the program details screen.

#### 7 Mini TV

- Switch to Mini TV. You can watch 1Seg while using another app (P. 25 “Mini app/Widget”).

#### 8 Controller

- The following operations are available with displayed keys.
  - To select a station with UP/DOWN: [CH>]/[<CH]\*
  - To adjust the volume: [V] ► drag the volume bar
  - To start/stop recording: [●]/[●]
- \* Touch and hold the key to select a station by searching a frequency.

#### 9 Website key

- Display a website on the information displaying area.

#### 10 Recorded file list key

- Display the recorded file list on the information displaying area.

#### 11 Information displaying area

- Operation keys appear while data broadcasting/a website is being displayed.

#### 12 Channel switching key

- Display the channel switching screen.

- While watching 1Seg, colors in the screen may appear different.
- Even if the home screen is displayed while activating 1Seg, information of data broadcasting/data broadcasting websites may be automatically updated, since 1Seg is kept activated. Note that packet communication charges may be incurred.
- If you receive a call while watching 1Seg, 1Seg will resume after the call is terminated. While recording 1Seg, recording continues in the background.
- When you play videos with another app while Mini TV is being used, videos may not be displayed properly.

## Recording

### Estimated number of savable entries and recording time

| Save destination | Number of savable entries | Recording time          |
|------------------|---------------------------|-------------------------|
| Handset memory   | Up to 99                  | Up to approx. 7,940 min |

- Recording videos to a microSD Card is not available.
- The recording size/time for each recording is up to approximately 2 GB/600 minutes. Even if the available space on the handset memory is sufficient, the video being recorded up to that point is saved and recording ends once the maximum recording size/time is reached.
- When you run out of available space on the handset memory, recording automatically ends, and the video being recorded up to that point is saved.

#### 1 In the 1Seg watching screen, [●]

## 2 Select a recording time

- When the set recording time has passed, recording ends and the video is automatically saved.
- To end recording: [●] ► [OK]
  - The video is automatically saved.

- Recording of some programs may be prohibited.
- When the time set for recording arrives while another 1Seg is being recorded, the recording of the latest timer-set program starts. The recording in progress up to that point ends, and the recorded program is saved.

## Playing recorded video

### Play a recorded video saved on the handset memory.

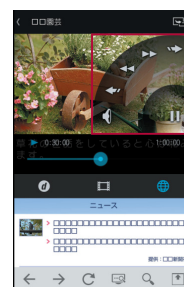
- Basic operations in video playback screen are the same as those in 1Seg watching screen. Operations that differ are explained here.

#### 1 In the 1Seg watching screen, [ ]

#### 2 Select a video

- To delete a recorded video: Touch and hold a video ► [ ] ► [OK]

#### 3 Watch the video



#### 1 Controller

- The following operations are available with displayed keys.
  - To pause/play: [ ]/[ ]
  - To fast reverse/forward: [ ]/[ ]\*1
  - To return to a location of approx. 5 seconds before/skip to a location of approx. 15 seconds later: [ ]/[ ]
  - To adjust the volume: [V] ► drag the volume bar
  - To play from the beginning: [ ]\*2
- \*1 Every time you touch it, the playback speed is switched.
- \*2 Displayed when the playback is finished.

- While a video is played, the data broadcasting for the broadcast station from which that video was recorded can be displayed.

## TV link

You can register memo information and URLs of related websites as TV link in some data broadcasting. If they are registered as TV link, you can check them from the TV link screen.

- You can register up to 50 TV links.
- Procedures for registering TV links may differ depending on the program.

#### 1 In the 1Seg watching screen, [ ] ► [TV Links]

- Display the registered TV links.

#### 2 Select a TV link

#### ■ Deleting TV links

#### 1 In the 1Seg watching screen, [ ] ► [TV Links]

#### 2 Touch and hold a TV link ► [ ] ► [OK]

## Recording/Watching reservation

You can set a timer for watching or recording 1Seg. In addition, you can check the reservation status and result.

- Record 1Seg in a good reception status.
- You can save up to 30 timer settings for watching and recording 1Seg.
- Multiple programs cannot be watched/recorded simultaneously. If the recording period you are about to set overlaps with that of an existing timer-set program, a confirmation screen for registration appears. Check the contents of the message, and then perform registration.

### 1 In the 1Seg watching screen, [≡] ▶ [Timer]

- To delete a reservation: Select a reservation ▶ [⊞] ▶ [OK]
- To display the reservation result list: [Timer] ▶ [Results of timer recordings]

### 2 [NEW TIMER SETTING] ▶ [Set a timer manually]

- To reserve from the program guide: [NEW TIMER SETTING] ▶ [Set a timer from G-GUIDE] ▶ reserve

### 3 Set each item



#### 1 Timer type

- Switch timer types.

#### 2 Title

- Enter a title.

#### 3 Station

- Set a broadcast station.

#### 4 Start date

- Set the start date.

#### 5 Start time

- Set the start time.

#### 6 Repeat

- Make settings for the repetition of the reservation.

#### 7 End time

- Set the end time.

### 4 [SET]

- Depending on usage of the handset, available space on the handset memory, the program type, etc., you may not be able to watch/record the program or recording may be stopped even if it is not finished yet.

## Setting 1Seg

You can make settings for data broadcasting, auto exit time of 1Seg, etc.

### 1 In the 1Seg watching screen, [≡] ▶ [General settings]

- **Controller display position**: Set the controller to be displayed on the left/right side.
- **Audio settings**: Make settings for the sound quality.
- **Data broadcasting settings**: Make settings for data broadcasting.
- **Alarm settings**: Make settings for the alarm activated when a reserved program starts.

- **TV off timer**: Set how long 1Seg will remain activated before it automatically ends.
- **Web browser settings**: Make setting for the browser.
- **Product information**: Confirm the version of this app.

#### [Data broadcasting settings]

- When [Confirmation] is disabled, the confirmation screen for data broadcasting does not appear and information of data broadcasting/data broadcasting websites may be automatically updated. Note that packet communication charges may be incurred.

#### [TV off timer]

- When the set time arrives while you are recording 1Seg, the confirmation screen for ending the recording is displayed.

## Audio/Subtitles settings

You can set subtitles to be displayed or change spoken language while watching 1Seg.

- Some functions may not be available depending on the program.

### 1 In the 1Seg watching screen, [≡] ▶ [Audio/Subtitles]

### 2 Select an item

- **Switch audio**: Set spoken language.
- **Switch sound-multiplex**: Make settings for main/sub audio channel.
- **Switch subtitles**: Make settings for subtitles to display.

## Camera

### Before using camera

- Fingerprints or fat on the lens may cause the image to be out of focus. In addition, images may blur, rays of light may appear in images when shot near a strong light source, etc. Wipe the lens with a soft cloth before shooting images.
- You cannot shoot when battery level is insufficient. Images may appear dark or distorted when shot with insufficient battery power even while the handset is charging. When you use the camera, charge the battery sufficiently in advance.
- Although the camera is made with high-precision technology, some pixels or lines look constantly dark or bright. Further, white lines and other noise may appear in images especially when shooting images in dimly lit surroundings.
- The quality of images may deteriorate when shot or saved after the handset has been left in a warm location for a long time.
- If the camera lens is exposed to direct sunlight for a long time, the internal color filter may discolor, creating a discoloration of shot images.
- Images shot in shooting conditions which include strong light source such as the sun or a lamp may appear dark or distorted.
- Shooting the sun directly may damage the performance of the CMOS.
- In the following cases, the handset may become warm and the camera may end. This is not a malfunction.
  - When shooting still pictures continuously
  - When shooting long videos
  - When activating the camera for a long timeUse the camera again after a while.
- When Focus settings are switched, sounds are heard from the camera lens. This is not a malfunction.
- Images are blurred when the handset moves while shooting images. Hold securely to prevent blurring. Use the shake reducing function when shooting still pictures.

- The color and brightness of the subject in images shot with the camera may differ from the actual color and brightness.
- Make sure that your fingers, hair, handset strap, etc. do not obscure the camera lens when shooting images.
- Because a larger picture size requires more data, movement in the image on the handset display may appear slow.
- Indoor fluorescent lighting may create flickering or streaky shading on the screen. This flickering or shading may be reduced by changing the lighting conditions and brightness of the room or adjusting the camera brightness and white balance.
- Shot still pictures are saved in DCF1.0 (ExifVer.2.3, JPEG) format.
- The camera is not available while watching 1Seg.

**Copyrights and rights of portrait**

Images and audio recorded with the handset are for personal use and may not be used for any other purposes without the consent of the rightful person in accordance with the Copyright Act. Please note that acts such as the use or defacement of the likeness or name of other individuals without their consent may infringe on an individual's rights of portrait. Please be aware of copyrights and rights of portrait when posting images and audio recorded with the handset on the Internet or similar media. The recording of images or audio may be restricted at concerts, performances and exhibits even when recorded for personal use. Do not use the handset to send copyrighted images for uses other than those permitted under the Copyright Act. If you cause the public any trouble using the handset, you may be punished under law or regulations (for example, nuisance prevention ordinance). Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when shooting and sending pictures using camera-enabled mobile phones.

■ **Performance while using camera**

- In each camera mode, if no operations are performed for approximately 3 minutes, the camera mode automatically ends and the scan result is deleted.
- The shutter sound volume cannot be changed.

■ **Picture size of camera**

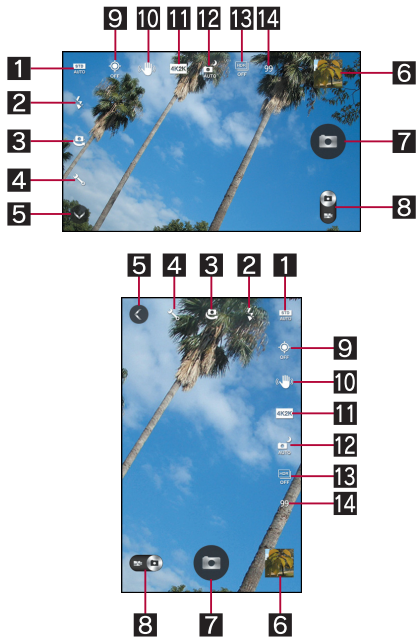
- The following picture sizes are available.

| Shooting mode       | Aspect ratio | Picture size       |
|---------------------|--------------|--------------------|
| Shoot still picture | 16:9         | 4K2K: 3840×2160    |
|                     |              | FULL HD: 1920×1080 |
|                     |              | HD: 1280×720*      |
|                     | 4:3          | 13M: 4128×3096     |
|                     |              | 3M: 2048×1536      |
|                     |              | 1.2M: 1280×960*    |
| Shoot video         | 16:9         | VGA: 640×480       |
|                     |              | FullHD: 1920×1080  |
|                     | 4:3          | HD: 1280×720       |
|                     |              | VGA: 640×480       |
|                     |              | QVGA: 320×240      |

\* Available only when you use the in-camera.

■ **Shooting screen layout**

Still picture shooting screen



Video shooting screen



- 1 Mode settings**
  - Set the shooting mode.
- 2 Mobile light**
  - Turn on/off the mobile light.
- 3 Switching in/out-camera**
  - Switch to the in-camera/out-camera.
- 4 Various settings**
  - Set various settings for shooting.
- 5 Switching displays**
- 6 Album/Thumbnail**
  - Activate Album.
- 7 Shutter**
- 8 Switching Camera/Video Camera**
  - Switch the camera mode to Camera/Video Camera.
- 9 Location info**
  - Set whether to add location information.
- 10 Shake Reducing**
  - Set whether to use the shake reducing function.
- 11 Picture size**
  - Set the picture size.
- 12 NightCatch**
  - Switch NightCatch settings. Set it to [AUTO] to make shady areas appear vivid on shot images.
- 13 HDR**
  - Set whether to use HDR.
- 14 Remaining number/time for shooting**
  - Displayed when the remaining number for shooting decreases to less than 99 as for the still picture shooting mode.
  - As for the video shooting mode, remaining time for shooting indicates the total recordable time. The recordable time per shot may be shorter than the displayed remaining time.
  - Even after shooting a still picture/video, remaining number/time for shooting may not be changed.
- 15 Battery level**

## Camera

Shoot a still picture.

### 1 In the home screen, [Camera]

- To adjust the brightness: Slide your finger up/down
- To zoom: Slide your finger to the left/right or pinch out/in
  - Maximum magnification (zoom step) is approximately 16.0-fold (120 steps).
- To lock the focus: Touch the subject
  - Touch anywhere other than focus frame to cancel the focus lock.

### 2 [📷]/[📷]/[📷]

- The shutter sounds and the shot still picture is automatically saved.
- Alternatively, you can shoot still pictures by touching the focus frame while the focus is locked.

## Video camera

Shoot a video.

### 1 In the home screen, [Camera] ▶ drag [📷] to [📷]

- To adjust the brightness: Slide your finger up/down
- To zoom: Slide your finger to the left/right or pinch out/in
  - Maximum magnification (zoom step) is approximately 16.0-fold (120 steps).

### 2 [📷]/[📷]/[📷]

- Shooting starts after the shooting start sound is heard.
- To shoot still pictures: [📷]

### 3 [📷]/[📷]/[📷]

- After the shooting end sound, the shot video is automatically saved.

- The remaining time indicator is an approximation. Shooting may continue longer than the remaining time indicated before the start of shooting or may automatically stop even when there is remaining time depending on the subject.

- The remaining time indicator changes according to the available space on the handset memory or a microSD Card and battery level.

## Album

You can sort images and videos by people, event and location and use them.

### 1 In the home screen, [Album]

### 2 Select a category

- To switch folder-by-folder display/data list display: [ALL] ▶ [👤]/[📅]

### 3 Select data

### 4 Confirm the data

- If the file is not displayed, the file may be displayed correctly by deleting a database file of Album. Connect the handset to a PC using Micro USB Cable 01 (sold separately) and delete ¥PRIVATE¥SHARP¥PM¥DATABASE folder on the handset memory or a microSD Card to use. If you delete the database file, created information of people etc. are also deleted. Take extra precautions and check when deleting.

## Sorting data

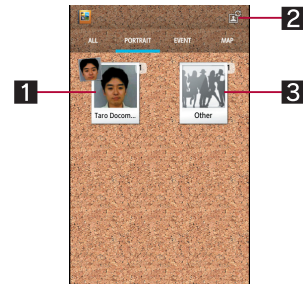
You can sort images and videos by created group.

### ■ Sorting by people

#### 1 In the album screen, [PORTRAIT]

- To set automatic sort: [☰] ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Easy sort setting] ▶ set each item

#### 2 Select a group



#### 1 Group of data already set

#### 2 Sort

- Sort images by people.

#### 3 Other

- Display data not grouped. You can create new groups or sort the data into created groups.

#### 3 [✂] ▶ [Create new person]

#### 4 Select data to classify ▶ [Create]

- When you select multiple data, the latest one is displayed.

#### 5 Select the cutout range ▶ [OK]

- Drag the orange frame border to enlarge/narrow the frame.

#### 6 [Input new portrait.] ▶ enter person's name ▶ [OK]

- Select [👤] to select and enter the person's name from the phonebook.

- Portrait photos are automatically sorted by Easy sort setting. Some photos may not be sorted correctly depending on the expression or direction of a person.

### ■ Sorting by event

#### 1 In the album screen, [EVENT]

#### 2 [Not set]

#### 3 [✂] ▶ [Create new event]

#### 4 Select data to classify ▶ [Create]

#### 5 [Input new event.] ▶ enter an event name ▶ [OK] ▶ [Create]

### ■ Sorting by location

- The data with location information attached is automatically sorted on a map.

#### 1 In the album screen, [MAP]

#### 2 [☰] ▶ [Location settings]

#### 3 Touch and hold the data to classify ▶ drag the data to the point to register it onto ▶ [OK]

# Media Player

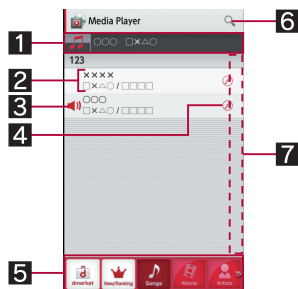
Play music data and video data saved on the handset memory or a microSD Card.

- The followings are the main file formats of playable music data.  
AAC, HE-AAC v1, HE-AAC v2, MP3, MIDI\*, WMA9, OGG  
\* Although this type of data does not appear in the all songs list, you can play the data by activating it from another app.
- The followings are the main file formats of playable video data.  
H.263, H.264, MPEG4, WMV, WEBM

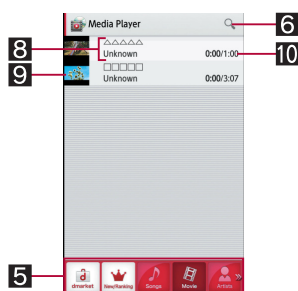
## 1 In the home screen, [ ] ▶ [Media Player]

- If the confirmation screen asking whether to read the usage explanations of Media Player appears, select [使い方の説明を読む] (Read the usage explanations)/[説明を読まず利用する] (Use without reading the explanations).

## 2 Select data



Music data list screen

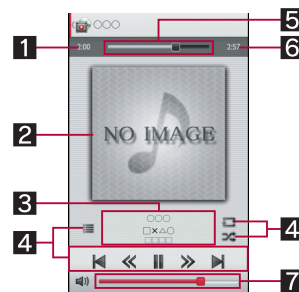


Video data list screen

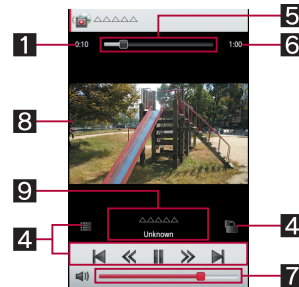
- 1 Music being played/paused**
- 2 Title/Artist name/Album title**
- 3 Icon indicating the data is being played/paused**
- 4 Music data settings**
  - Touch it to set the music as a ringtone, add the music to a playlist or delete the music.
- 5 Bottom bar**
  - Slide it to the left/right to switch displays of category.
- 6 Search contents**
- 7 Index**
  - Slide the index to move to the selected heading.
- 8 Title/Artist name**
- 9 Thumbnail**
- 10 Playback time/Total playback time**

## 3 Play music/video

- To adjust the playback volume: [ ]/[ ]



Music playback screen



Video playback screen

### 1 Playback time

### 2 Jacket image

### 3 Title/Artist name/Album title

### 4 Operation panel

- The following operations are available with displayed keys.
  - To play previous data/return to the beginning of the data: [ ]\*1
  - To play next data: [ ]
  - To return to a location of approx. 10 seconds before/skip to a location of approx. 10 seconds later: [ ]/[ ]
  - To play/pause the data: [ ]/[ ]
  - To display the data list screen: [ ]
  - To repeat the data: [ ]\*2
  - To shuffle the data: [ ]
  - To lock the auto-rotation of the screen: [ ]
- \*1 When the playback time is less than approximately 2 seconds: Play previous data  
When the playback time is approximately 2 seconds or more: Return to the beginning of the data
- \*2 When [ ] is superimposed, repeat only one song.

### 5 Seek bar

- Drag the seek bar to change the playback position.

### 6 Total playback time

### 7 Volume bar

### 8 Image

### 9 Title/Artist name

## ■ Sorting icons

1 In the data list screen, [ ] ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Arrange icons]

2 Drag [ ] to the point to sort into ▶ [Apply]

## Managing playlists

### ■ Creating playlists

1 In the data list screen, [Play list] ▶ [Add] ▶ enter a playlist name ▶ [OK]

2 Select music data ▶ [Apply] ▶ [Save] ▶ [OK]

## ■ Editing playlists

**1 In the data list screen, [Play list] ▶ select a playlist**

**2 [Edit]**

- To rename the playlist: [Edit title] ▶ enter a playlist name ▶ [OK]
- To sort music data: Drag [≡] appearing alongside the song to sort to the desired position
- To delete music data: Select music data ▶ [Delete selected songs]

**3 [Save] ▶ [OK]**

## ■ Deleting playlists

**1 In the data list screen, [Play list] ▶ [Reorder/Delete]**

**2 Select a playlist ▶ [Save] ▶ [OK]**

# GPS/Navigation

## Using GPS function

- GPS is a function to retrieve location information of devices by receiving radio wave from GPS satellites. It is necessary to set Access to my location to [ON] to measure the present location (P. 63 “Location services”).
- You cannot use the handset as a navigation system for professional use of aircrafts, vehicles, person, etc. or surveying GPS of high accuracy. Note that DOCOMO shall not be liable for the pure economic losses such as ones caused by using the GPS for these purposes or by failing to confirm a positioning result or to communicate due to handset failure, malfunction or external factors such as power failure (including battery exhaustion).
- GPS is a service administered by the U.S. Department of Defense. Therefore, GPS radio wave condition may be controlled (accuracy degradation, radio wave abort, etc.) for US national security reasons. In addition, the same results may not be retrieved even when positioned in the same location and environment, since the radio wave conditions may change depending on the location of the GPS satellites.
- Note that GPS uses the radio waves from satellites, therefore the following conditions may cause the radio waves to abort or have difficulty to receive resulting in an error of 300 m or more for location information.
  - In or under a dense forest, in density area with buildings or residence
  - In or under buildings
  - In a basement, tunnel, underground or underwater
  - Near high-tension line
  - Inside cars, trains, etc.
  - In bad weather with heavy rain/snow etc.
  - In bags or boxes
  - When people or objects are blocking the handset
  - When hands are covering the camera, 1Seg antenna, earpiece or proximity sensor of the handset
- When using a GPS function overseas, the displayed map based on the acquired location information (latitude and longitude information) may not be accurate because of the legal system in each country and the area.
- Packet communication charges may be incurred, since assisted GPS data such as satellite information is automatically retrieved when you measure present location.

- Packet communication charges are incurred when you display a map based on the location information etc.

## Maps

**You can measure your present location, and use the navigation function to check how to get to your destination in detail.**

- It is necessary to set the followings to measure the present location.
  - Set Access to my location to [ON] or enable [Use GPS satellites] (P. 63 “Location services”).
  - In the map displaying screen, flick [≡] to the right ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Google location settings] ▶ [Access location] ▶ [OK] to enable [Access location].

**1 In the home screen, select “Google” folder ▶ [Maps]**

**2 Use the maps**

- To rotate the screen: Rotate with your two fingers
- To display sterically: Slide down with your two fingers
- To use Navigation: [🔍] ▶ search for routes
- To use Local: Touch the search box ▶ search for facilities
- To display My Maps: [👤]
- To measure present location: [📍]

- Set up a Google account in advance to display My Maps.

## ■ Street view

**1 In the map screen, touch and hold any place**

**2 Touch the address, name of place or facility, etc. ▶ [Street View]**

- To change a displayed direction: Slide the screen up/down or to the left/right
- To move a displayed place: Touch an arrow
- To switch to Compass mode: [🧭]

- Some areas are not supported by Street view.
- When Compass mode is used, the geomagnetic compass of the handset and the direction displayed by Street view are associated with each other.

## Navigation

**You can search for a route from the present location to the destination.**

- It is necessary to set the followings to use Navigation.
  - Enable [Use GPS satellites] (P. 63 “Location services”).
  - In the map displaying screen, flick [≡] to the right ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Google location settings] ▶ [Access location] ▶ [OK] to enable [Access location].

**1 In the home screen, [≡] ▶ [Navigation]**

**2 Select how to get to the end point**

**3 Touch the search box above ▶ enter a start point**

**4 Touch the search box below ▶ enter an end point**

**5 [Start]**

- Select a direction to take if multiple directions are displayed.

## Local

You can search for facilities near your present location according to genre.

- It is necessary to set the followings to measure the present location.
  - Set Access to my location to [ON] or enable [Use GPS satellites] (P. 63 “Location services”).
  - In the map displaying screen, flick [ ] to the right ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Google location settings] ▶ [Access location] ▶ [OK] to enable [Access location].

### 1 In the home screen, [ ] ▶ [Local]

### 2 Select a genre of facilities you want to search

- Alternatively, you can search by entering a name of place to be searched in the search box.

### 3 Use the search result

- To display detailed information: Select an address, a name of place or facility, etc.
- If there are two or more search results, touch a marker or slide an address, a name of place or facility, etc. to the left/right to display the other search results. Also, touch [ ] to display the search results as a list.

## YouTube

YouTube is a free online video streaming service. You can play, search and upload videos.

### 1 In the home screen, select “Google” folder ▶ [YouTube]

### 2 Select a video

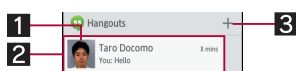
- To display the search box: [ ]

## Hangouts

Hangouts is an online instant message service provided by Google. You can communicate with other people having Google account using chat (talk using characters), voice chat and video chat.

### 1 In the home screen, select “Google” folder ▶ [Hangouts]

### 2 Select a person



#### 1 Image

- An image registered by the other party is displayed.

#### 2 Other party during chat

- [Wants to Hangout] appears when you have received an invitation. Touch it to decline or reply to the invitation.

#### 3 Add people for chat

### 3 Enter a message ▶ [▶]

## Alarm/Clock

### Alarm

Activate an alarm tone or vibrator at the specified time/day of the week.

- You can save up to ten alarms.

### 1 In the home screen, [ ] ▶ [Alarm/Clock] ▶ [Alarm]

- To adjust the alarm volume: [ ] ▶ [Alarm volume] ▶ adjust the volume ▶ [OK]
- To set the alarm to/not to ring while the manner mode is set: [ ] ▶ [For Manner Mode] ▶ select the setting

### 2 Select a register destination

### 3 Set each item



#### 1 Name

- Enter the name.

#### 2 Enable/disable alarm

- Set whether to use the alarm.

#### 3 Time

- Set the time when the alarm rings.

#### 4 Alarm sound

- Set the alarm sound.

#### 5 Repeat

- Set the repetition of the alarm.

#### 6 Ring duration

- Set the alarm duration.

#### 7 Enable/disable snooze

- Set whether to use the snooze.

#### 8 Snooze interval

- Set the snooze interval.

#### 9 Snooze repeat

- Set the number of snooze repetition.

#### 10 Vibrator Setting

- Set whether to use the vibrator.

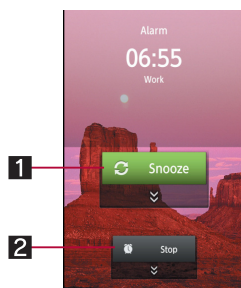
#### 11 Illumi

- Set the flashing type and color of the incoming illumination.

- The alarm is not activated when the handset is turned off at the set time of the alarm.
- The alarm is not activated when the set time of the alarm arrives during a call. Upon the end of the call, the alarm is activated.
- When a set time arrives during another alarm sounding, the alarm is delayed. When the former alarm stops or the duration has elapsed, the delayed alarm restarts.

- The alarm does not sound if Alarm volume is set to “0” or if you set For Manner Mode to [Do not Ring] while the manner mode is set.

## Alarm sounding screen layout



### 1 Stop the alarm

- Drag the icon down to stop the alarm. Snooze still works after stopping the alarm.
- You can operate only when Enable/disable snooze is set to [ON].

### 2 End the alarm

- Drag the icon down to end the alarm.

## WorldClock

Display city time around the world.

- WorldClock can display times for up to ten cities.

### 1 In the home screen, [App Icon] ▶ [Alarm/Clock] ▶ [WorldClock]

### 2 [Add] ▶ select a city

- To switch daylight saving time: Touch and hold a city ▶ [Switch summer time]
- To delete cities: [Trash] ▶ select cities ▶ [Delete] ▶ [Yes]

- [☀] appears on cities for which daylight saving time is set.
- You may not be able to switch to daylight saving time depending on the city.

## StopWatch

### 1 In the home screen, [App Icon] ▶ [Alarm/Clock] ▶ [StopWatch]

### 2 [Start]

- To record the lap time and split time: [Lap]

### 3 [Stop]

- To reset measured time and history: [Reset]

- You can record up to 99 histories of lap time and split time. When the number exceeds 99, they are deleted starting with the oldest.
- Measured time and history are reset by ending Alarm/Clock.

## Timer

Activate an alarm tone or vibration after the specified length of time passes.

### 1 In the home screen, [App Icon] ▶ [Alarm/Clock] ▶ [Timer]

### 2 Touch the set time ▶ enter the time ▶ [OK]

- Touch [10sec]/[1min]/[5min]/[10min] to add 10 seconds/1 minute/5 minutes/10 minutes to the set time.
- To reset the set time to 00 minute 00 second: [Reset]
- Select [🔔] to set Alarm Sound/Vibrator Setting/Illumi.

## 3 [Start]

- To cancel the countdown: [Reset]
- To stop the countdown: [Stop]

## Schedule

Create and manage schedules.

### 1 In the home screen, [Schedule]

- If the confirmation screen for the license agreement is displayed, check the content and select [同意する] (Agree).

### 2 Check schedules



#### 1 Selected date, name of holiday

#### 2 Registered schedule

- The number of registered items is displayed.

#### 3 Schedules for selected date

#### 4 Create new schedule

- The method for registering schedules is the same as creating memo (📖 P. 54 “Memo”).

#### 5 Switch displays

- Switch display methods of the calendar.

#### 6 Conditions

- Set conditions of schedules to be displayed. Also, you can search for schedules.

#### 7 Jump to any date

## Setting schedule

### 1 In the schedule screen, [Menu] ▶ [Settings]

### 2 Select an item

- “Today’s schedule” setting: Set to notify the schedules of the day at the specified time.
- Alarm: Make settings for the alarm.
- Initial screen: Set a screen shown when Schedule is activated.
- Starting day: Set the starting day of a week on the calendar.
- Update birthday data: Apply birthday data in the phonebook to the calendar.
- Change account: Set the account used when creating schedules.
- Cloud setting: Set whether to use cloud computing.

## Deleting a schedule

### 1 In the schedule screen, touch and hold a schedule

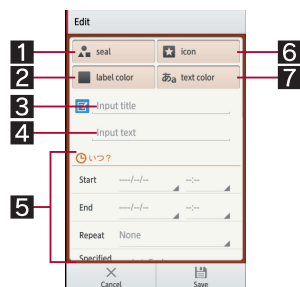


### 2 [Delete one] ▶ [Delete]

## Memo

Create and manage memos.

- 1 In the home screen, [ ] ▶ [Memo] ▶ [Add]
  - If the confirmation screen for the license agreement is displayed, check the content and select [同意する] (Agree).
- 2 Set each item



- 1 Seal
  - You can paste and remove stickers (pictogram/Deco-mail pictogram) which decorate memos nicely.
- 2 Label color
  - Change label colors.
- 3 Title
- 4 Text
- 5 Edit details
  - You can set the details such as date and time or attach images.
- 6 Icon
  - Change icons.
- 7 Text color
  - Change text colors of the title.

### 3 [Save]

## Calculator

- 1 In the home screen, [ ] ▶ [Calculator]
- 2 Calculate

- When the calculator is closed, its memories are deleted.
- Results or history information may be deleted while it is activated in the background.

## SH tool

You can use convenient functions such as voice recorder, business card reader, bar code reader and dictionaries.

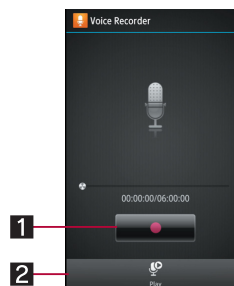
- For details on AV Device Link P. 76 “Cooperating with Blu-ray Disc recorder”
- For details on Contents Manager P. 69 “Contents Manager”

### Voice recorder

- You cannot record when the available space on the handset memory is less than 300 KB.

- 1 In the home screen, [SH tool] ▶ [Recommendation] ▶ [Voice Recorder]

## 2 Record/Play



### 1 Operation key

- The following operations are available with displayed keys.
    - To start recording: [ ]\*1
    - To stop recording: [ ]\*2
- \*1 Recording start sound is heard and recording starts.  
\*2 Recording stop sound is heard and recorded data is saved.

### 2 Play

- Displays recorded data as a list. Select one of them to play it.
- If you touch immediately after recording, the data which has just been recorded is played.

- Recording start and stop sounds are activated regardless of the setting of the handset.
- Recording automatically stops when recording time reaches the maximum or when the handset memory has no available space.
- When a call is received during recording, recording stops, recorded data is automatically saved and the call can be answered. After the call ends, the save completion notification screen appears.
- When a call is received during playing, playing is automatically paused and the call can be answered. After the call ends, the play screen appears while pausing data.

## Pedometer

Support everyday walking and jogging with the pedometer. The number of steps, calories burnt, etc. are saved as history. You can check them as graph.

- Register User Information and enable [Pedometer On] in advance.
- If vibration or shake is applied to the handset by the vibrator etc., the number of steps may not be counted correctly.
- Counted number of steps may not be displayed correctly depending on how to put on, measure or walk.
- When carrying the handset in Carry Case 02 (sold separately), put the Carry Case 02 on a belt etc.
- When carrying the handset in a bag or pouch, place it in a stable space such as in a pocket or compartment.

- 1 In the home screen, [SH tool] ▶ [Recommendation] ▶ [Pedometer/ calories]

- The confirmation screen is displayed only when the pedometer settings have not been finished. Select [Yes] and finish the pedometer settings.

- The first number of steps for approximately 4 seconds is counted, but it will not be displayed as counted steps. Keep walking, and then the total number of steps including it will be displayed as counted steps.

### Cautions when counting the number of steps

In the following cases, the number of steps may not be counted correctly.

- When the handset shakes irregularly
  - When the bag which contains the handset shakes irregularly by hitting legs or hip
  - When dangling the handset from your waist, bag, etc.
- When walked irregularly
  - When shuffled or walked irregularly wearing sandals, geta, slippers, etc.
  - When disarray of walk occurred such as walking in the crowded place
- When used in a place with up-and-down movement or frequent vibration
  - When stood up or sit down
  - When played sports other than walking and jogging
  - When walked up/down stairs or steep slope
  - When being wobbled in the vehicles (bicycle, car, train, bus, etc.)
- When walked extremely slowly

### ■ Pedometer setting

You can make settings for the pedometer such as User Information.

- To enable [Pedometer On], register User Information in advance.

**1 In the home screen, [SH tool] ▶ [Recommendation] ▶ [Pedometer/ calories]**

**2 [ ] ▶ [Settings]**

**3 Select an item**

- **Pedometer On:** Set whether to use the pedometer.
- **User Information:** Register height, weight and stride.
- **Pedometer Reset Time:** Set time to reset the pedometer.

- When [Pedometer On] is enabled, the number of steps is always counted while the power is turned on.
- The display of the pedometer is reset once a day at the time set for Pedometer Reset Time.

## Business card reader

You can scan information such as name or phone number from a business card (Japanese/English) with the camera and save it to the phonebook.

**1 In the home screen, [SH tool] ▶ [Reading] ▶ [Read business card.]**

- To adjust the brightness: Slide your finger up/down

**2 Display a business card in the center of the screen ▶ [Read]**

- The shutter sounds.
- Hold the handset securely to fit the entire business card within the frame displayed on the screen. Make sure that no other objects, especially text-written objects, are displayed on the screen.
- Keep the camera approximately 10 cm away from the business card.
- As for scanning, the direction of the business card can be either vertical or horizontal on the screen. Do not place the card obliquely.

**3 [Recognition]**

**4 [Add to Address book]**

- To copy the scan result: [ ] ▶ [Copy All]

**5 Select to which account to register ▶ [OK]**

- The shot card images are automatically saved.

## 6 [No]

- To edit the registered contact: [Yes] ▶ edit the contact

- Some business cards cannot be scanned or recognized properly.

## Bar code reader

You can use the camera to scan bar codes (JAN/QR codes), and perform various operations according to the contents of scanned item.

### JAN code

- JAN code is a type of bar code using vertical bars of varying width to express numbers.
- JAN8 and JAN13 can be read.

### QR code

- QR code is a type of two-dimensional code expressing data vertically and horizontally.

**1 In the home screen, [SH tool] ▶ [Reading] ▶ [Read barcode.]**

- To adjust the brightness: Slide your finger up/down

**2 Scan the bar code**

- The bar code reader screen appears and scanning starts. Display bar code to be scanned in the center of the screen.
- Position the camera approximately 10 cm right away from the bar code. Keep aligned and do not move the handset or code while scanning.
- When scanning is complete, an end tone sounds and the scan result screen appears.

### Split data

- QR codes include one which forms a single data after split multiple data (up to 16) are scanned. Repeat the scanning operation until all split data are scanned and a scan result appears.

**3 Use the scan result**

- When you have scanned a phone number, URL or mail address, touch the scan result to use it.
- To register the scan result: [ ] ▶ [Entry data]
  - In the bar code reader screen, [ ] ▶ [Confirm data] ▶ select data to confirm the registered scan result.
- To copy the scan result: [ ] ▶ [Copy All]

- Some bar codes may not be scanned depending on types or sizes.
- Bar codes may not be scanned due to scratches, dirt, damage, poor print quality, lighting conditions or QR code version.

## Store information reader

You can scan information such as store name or phone number from a magazine etc. by using the camera, and save it to the phonebook.

**1 In the home screen, [SH tool] ▶ [Reading] ▶ [Read retail directory.]**

- To adjust the brightness: Slide your finger up/down

**2 Display information in the center of the screen ▶ [Read]**

- The shutter sounds.
- Hold the handset securely to fit necessary information within the screen. However, if the text gets too small, display a phone number, an address, etc. large enough to be scanned.
- Keep the camera approximately 10 cm away from necessary information.

**3 [Recognition]**

## 4 [Add to Address book]

- To copy the scan results: [≡] ▶ [Copy All]

## 5 Select to which account to register ▶ [OK]

- The shot images are automatically saved.

## 6 [No]

- To edit the registered contact: [Yes] ▶ edit the contact

- Some information may not be scanned or recognized properly depending on the description of magazine etc.

## Text reader

You can scan an article of newspaper, magazines, etc. by using the camera, and perform various operations.

### 1 In the home screen, [SH tool] ▶ [Reading] ▶ [Read character.]

- To adjust the brightness: Slide your finger up/down

### 2 Display the text to scan on the screen ▶ [Shoot]

- The shutter sounds.

### 3 Point the cursor to the line to scan with [▲]/[▼] ▶ [Read]

- When letters written in vertical direction are recognized: [◀]/[▶]
- The line to which the cursor is pointed is displayed in light blue frame.

## 4 [OK]

- To change scanning modes: [≡] ▶ select a mode

## 5 Use the scan results

- To copy the scan results: [Copy All]
- When you have scanned a phone number, URL or mail address, touch the scan result to use it.
- To scan characters continuously: [≡] ▶ [Read next] ▶ scan characters
- To insert a line feed and scan characters additionally: [≡] ▶ [Read more] ▶ scan characters
- To search in dictionaries: [≡] ▶ [Search dictionary] ▶ select an app ▶ search in dictionaries
- To edit the scan results: [≡] ▶ [Edit] ▶ edit the characters

- Text may not be scanned correctly due to scratches, dirt, damage, poor print quality, lighting conditions or text size.

## Dictionary

Enter the keyword and search in the built-in or online dictionaries.

- By default, the following e-dictionaries are preset on the handset (Part of the dictionary may differ from printed version due to computerization).

- 明鏡国語辞典MX 第二版 (Meikyo Japanese Dictionary MX (2nd edition))  
Containing approximately 64,000 words centered around frequently used modern language. Wide range of new words and information on wrong use are added.
- ジーニアス英和辞典MX 増補版 (Genius EJ Dictionary MX (expanded edition))  
A major English-Japanese dictionary, which is convenient for reading newspapers, magazines and various articles. New words and technical terms are added. Containing approximately 202,000 words.

- ジーニアス和英辞典MX 第2版 (Genius JE Dictionary MX (2nd edition))  
A full-fledged words Japanese-English dictionary, which contains approximately 67,000 words centered around modern language and 84,000 examples. Also it contains wide range of proper nouns such as place names and personal names.

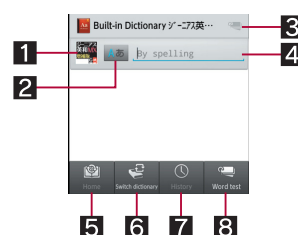
(“明鏡国語辞典MX 第二版” ©KITAHAARA Yasuo and Taishukan, 2012, “ジーニアス英和辞典MX 増補版”, “ジーニアス和英辞典MX 第2版” ©MINAMIDE Kosei, NAKAMURA Mitsuo and Taishukan, 2012)

- “百科事典” (Encyclopedia), an online dictionary, is available by default.

### 1 In the home screen, [SH tool] ▶ [Dictionary] ▶ [Japanese dictionary]/[English-Japanese dictionary]/[Japanese-English dictionary]/[Net dictionary]

### 2 Search

- An English-Japanese dictionary is used in the following screen.



#### 1 Dictionary icon

- Displays the dictionary you use now.
- Touch it to switch the dictionaries to use.

#### 2 Switching input mode

- Touch it to switch input modes.

#### 3 Word card/Setting

- When you use the built-in dictionary, the registered word cards are displayed.
- When you use an online dictionary, you can set the search method.

#### 4 Search keyword entry field

- Enter the keyword to search with.
- When you use the built-in dictionary, search results are displayed every time a character is entered.
- When you use an online dictionary, enter the keyword ▶ [Search] to display search results.

#### 5 Home

- Search for a new word.

#### 6 Switch dictionary

- Switch the dictionaries to use.

#### 7 History

- Displays the words you have searched before.

#### 8 Word test/Manage

- When you use the built-in dictionary, word test based on the word cards you have registered in the search result screen is available.
- When you use an online dictionary, you can manage dictionaries.

### 3 Select a search result

- To register the search result as a word card: [Add word card]

# Backing up data and settings

## microSD backup

You can collectively back up/restore data saved on the handset memory.

- The following data can be backed up/restored using microSD backup.
  - Phonebook ■ SMS ■ Bookmark ■ Calendar
  - User/Learning dictionary (iWnn IME - SH edition)
- During microSD backup, [Airplane mode] is enabled.
- When the available space on the handset memory is less than 11 MB, microSD backup is not available.
- Insert a microSD Card in advance.

### ■ Saving backup file

- 1 In the home screen, [ ] ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Storage] ▶ [microSD backup]
- 2 [Backup] ▶ enter the passcode ▶ [OK]
- 3 Select the data categories to save
  - If you select [Address Book], the screen for selecting which account to save is displayed.
- 4 [Save] ▶ [Yes]
- 5 [Complete]

● You cannot save the data when battery level is insufficient.

### ■ Restoring backup file

- 1 In the home screen, [ ] ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Storage] ▶ [microSD backup]
- 2 [Restore] ▶ enter the passcode ▶ [OK]
- 3 Select backup files to restore
- 4 [Add registration]/[Delete and register]
  - The confirmation screen appears. Follow the instructions on the screen and operate after this step.

● You cannot restore the data when battery level is insufficient.

### ■ Setting/Managing backup file

- 1 In the home screen, [ ] ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Storage] ▶ [microSD backup] ▶ [Management/Settings]
- 2 Select an item
  - **Organize backup files:** You can delete saved backup data.
  - **Addr.book pic backup:** Set whether to back up images registered in a phonebook when backing up the phonebook.
  - **View result screen:** Display the latest result of saving/restoring backup files.

## docomo backup (Backing up to/Restoring from Data Storage Box)

You can move and back up data such as music data, bookmarks and call logs by using Data Storage Box.

- The following data can be backed up/restored using docomo backup (Backing up to/Restoring from Data Storage Box).
  - Music data ■ Bookmark ■ Call log
  - User dictionary

### 1 In the home screen, [ ] ▶ [docomo backup]

- If the confirmation screen for the license agreement is displayed, check the content and select [Agree].
- If Backup reminder settings is displayed, check the content, follow the instructions on the screen and operate.

### 2 [Backup/restore to docomo cloud]

#### ■ Backing up data to Data Storage Box

- 1 In the screen for backing up/restoring data to/from Data Storage Box, [Backup]
  - If the confirmation screen for login is displayed, follow the instructions on the screen and operate.
- 2 Select the data categories to save
- 3 [Start backup] ▶ [Backup]
- 4 Enter the docomo apps password ▶ [OK]
- 5 [Back to cloud top]

● When Backup reminder settings is set to [ON], the timing of backup is periodically displayed on the status bar.

#### ■ Restoring data to the handset

- 1 In the screen for backing up/restoring data to/from Data Storage Box, [Restore]
  - If the confirmation screen for login is displayed, follow the instructions on the screen and operate.
- 2 [Select] of a data category to restore
- 3 Select a backup file ▶ [Select]
- 4 [Add]/[Overwrite]
- 5 [Start restore] ▶ [Restore]
- 6 Enter the docomo apps password ▶ [OK]
- 7 [Back to cloud top]

● When you restore data from Data Storage Box, data is restored to the save destination from which it was backed up. If you change models etc., data may be restored to a save destination different from the location from which it was backed up.

## docomo backup (Backing up to/Restoring from a microSD Card)

You can move and back up data such as phonebooks, docomo mails/sp-mode mails and bookmarks by using external memory devices such as microSD Card.

- The following data can be backed up/restored using docomo backup (Backing up to/Restoring from a microSD Card).
  - Phonebook    ■ docomo mail/sp-mode mail    ■ Image
  - Video        ■ Music data                                    ■ Bookmark
  - Call log      ■ User dictionary                                ■ ToruCa
  - Schedule/Memo
- When a microSD Card is not inserted, images, movies, music data, etc. are saved on the handset memory. In docomo backup (Backing up to/Restoring from a microSD Card), only the data saved on the handset memory are backed up. The data saved on a microSD Card are not backed up.

### 1 In the home screen, [ ] ▶ [docomo backup]

- If the confirmation screen for the license agreement is displayed, check the content and select [Agree].
- If Backup reminder settings is displayed, check the content, follow the instructions on the screen and operate.

### 2 [Backup/restore to microSD]

- Do not remove the microSD Card from the handset while backing up or restoring data. Data on the handset may be damaged.
- When battery level is insufficient, backup or restoration may not be available. In this case, back up or restore again after charging the handset.

### ■ Backing up data to a microSD Card

- Insert a microSD Card in advance.

### 1 In the SD card backup screen, [Backup]

### 2 Select the data categories to save

### 3 [Start backup] ▶ [Backup]

### 4 Enter the docomo apps password ▶ [OK]

### 5 [Back to top]

- When you back up phonebook to a microSD Card, you cannot copy phonebook data without name.
- When the available space on the microSD Card is insufficient, backup may not be available. In this case, secure enough space by deleting unnecessary files from the microSD Card.

### ■ Restoring data to the handset

- Insert a microSD Card that includes backup files created via docomo backup (Backing up to/Restoring from a microSD Card) in advance.
- When restoring phonebooks, you can also restore files created with PhoneBookCopy or with a function in an i-mode enabled device which allows you to back up data to a microSD Card.

### 1 In the SD card backup screen, [Restore]

### 2 [Select] of a data category to restore

### 3 Select backup files ▶ [Select]

### 4 [Add]/[Overwrite]

### 5 [Start restore] ▶ [Restore]

### 6 Enter the docomo apps password ▶ [OK]

### 7 [Back to top]

### ■ Copying phonebook of Google account to docomo account

### 1 In the SD card backup screen, [Phonebook account copy]

### 2 [Select] of a phonebook of Google account

### 3 [Overwrite]/[Add] ▶ [OK]

- If the name of a phonebook item (phone number etc.) on other devices differs from that on your handset, the name of the item may be changed or deleted. Also, characters which can be registered to phonebook differ among devices, so the characters may be deleted at the copy destination.

## iD appli

“iD” is convenient electronic money using credit-card transactions. You can pay easily and conveniently by simply holding an Osaifu-Keitai in which credit card information is set or an iD compatible card over the scanning device at stores etc. Osaifu-Keitai can register two types of credit card information, and can be used according to the benefits.

- For using iD with Osaifu-Keitai, subscription to credit card company compatible with iD and setting of iD appli are required.
- Expense (annual fee etc.) for using iD service may vary depending on the credit card company.
- For use overseas, packet communication charges differ from those in Japan.
- For information on iD, refer to iD website.  
<http://id-credit.com/> (in Japanese only)

# Handset Settings

## Setting menu

In the home screen, [Settings] ► [Settings] to display the menu and set various settings of the handset.

|                         |                                                                                                          |
|-------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Profile                 | Display your phone number registered on the docomo mini UIM card and register a name, mail address, etc. |
| Call                    | Make settings for call such as voice mail and call rejection.                                            |
| Sound                   | Make settings for the manner mode, ringtone, incoming illumination, etc.                                 |
| Display                 | Make settings for the screen display etc.                                                                |
| Storage                 | Check the available space on a microSD Card, the handset, etc., manage the backup, etc.                  |
| Battery & energy saving | Activate Energy saving settings or Energy save standby, check the battery level, etc.                    |
| Useful                  | Make settings for Recent Apps key or perform Self check or Initial setting.                              |
| Home applications       | Switch lock screens or home apps to use.                                                                 |
| Application             | Check names, versions, memory usage, etc. of apps, enable/disable apps, uninstall them, etc.             |
| Wi-Fi                   | Make settings for the Wi-Fi function.                                                                    |
| Bluetooth               | Connect the handset and Bluetooth devices wirelessly.                                                    |
| Data usage              | Measure the volume of data communicated via mobile networks and display it on a diagram.                 |
| More...                 | Make settings for other functions in WIRELESS & NETWORKS.                                                |
| docomo service/cloud    | Make settings for the docomo service/docomo cloud.                                                       |
| Location services       | Make settings for the way to retrieve location information.                                              |
| Lock & Security         | Make settings for the security lock.                                                                     |
| Language & input        | Make settings for the language displayed on the screen, character entry, text-to-speech, etc.            |
| Backup & reset          | Perform Reset all or transfer data.                                                                      |
| Add account             | Add accounts.                                                                                            |
| Date & time             | Make settings for the date and time and their format.                                                    |
| Accessibility           | Make settings for accessibility options.                                                                 |
| Device info             | Check the information about the handset.                                                                 |

## Profile

You can display your phone number registered on the docomo mini UIM card and register a name, mail address, etc.

- 1 In the home screen, [Settings] ► [Settings] ► [Profile]
- 2 [Edit] ► set each item ► [Save]

## Sound

You can make settings for the manner mode, ringtone, incoming illumination, etc.

- 1 In the home screen, [Settings] ► [Settings] ► [Sound]
- 2 Select an item

- **Mode settings:** For details P. 59 "Mode settings"
- **Volume:** Set the volume of media play sound, ringtone, etc.
- **For Incoming call:** Make settings for operations for receiving calls.
  - To set an illumination type and a color: [Ringer illumi] ► [Illumi pattern/color] ► select a type ► [OK] ► select a color ► [OK]
- **For notification:** Make settings for operations for receiving notifications.
  - To make the notification illumination flash: [Blink notification illumi]
- **Illumination:** Make settings for the incoming illumination for when the screen is turned on or files are sent/received via the Bluetooth communication.
- **Haptic feedback:** Set whether to activate the vibrator when a specific key operation etc. is carried out.
- **Audible touch tones:** Set whether or not to enable operation sounds for touching menus etc.
- **Dial pad touch tones:** Set whether or not to enable dialing sounds.
- **Screen lock sounds:** Set whether or not to enable sounds for locking/unlocking the touch panel.
- **Sound start charging:** Set whether to ring sounds when charging starts.

## Mode settings

Set to avoid disturbing others when in public.

- 1 In the home screen, [Settings] ► [Settings] ► [Sound] ► [Mode settings]
  - Alternatively, ( ) (for at least 1 second) ► [ ]/[ ]/[ ] to enable/disable the manner mode.
- 2 Select the type of the manner mode
  - **Standard manner mode:** The ringtone and operation sound are silenced, and the vibrator is activated when receiving a call or others. When Answering memo setting is set to [Mannermode], the answering memo is enabled and operated according to its setting.
  - **Drive manner mode:** The ringtone and operation sound are silenced, and even the vibrator is not activated when receiving a call or others. The answering memo is enabled and operated with Answering message setting set to [Drive].
  - **Silent manner mode:** The ringtone and operation sound are silenced, and even the vibrator is not activated when receiving a call or others. When Answering memo setting is set to [Mannermode], the answering memo is enabled and operated according to its setting.
  - **OFF:** Disable the manner mode.

- The following sounds are not silenced even when the manner mode is set.
  - Shutter sound of the camera
  - Focus locking sound of the camera
  - Record start/end sound of the video camera
  - Record start/end sound of the voice recorder
  - Media play sound (music, video, 1Seg, etc.)
- While the manner mode is set, the ringtone volume cannot be changed by pressing [ ]/[ ].

# Display

You can make settings for the screen display etc.

## 1 In the home screen, [⋮] ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Display]

## 2 Select an item

- **Wallpaper**: Set an image for the home screen.
- **Welcome Sheet(lock screen)**: Make setting for the screen displayed when the touch panel is locked.
- **Screen edge effect**: Set the effect on edges of the screen shown when the display is turned on.
- **Brightness**: For details ⓘ P. 60 "Brightness"
- **Screen timeout**: Set the light duration of the backlight.
- **Quality mode**: Make settings for the picture quality.
- **Auto-rotate screen**: Set whether to switch the screen to horizontal/vertical display when rotating the handset 90° to the left/right.
- **Screen on/off with motion**: Make settings for Sweep ON, Shake OFF and Bright Keep.
- **Font Settings**: Make settings for the text size or text font.
- **VeilView**: For details ⓘ P. 60 "VeilView"
- **Daydream**: Set whether to use the screen saver.
- **Display left percents of Battery**: Set whether to display the percentage of the remaining battery level in the status bar.

### [Welcome Sheet(lock screen)]

- You can set it only when [Feel UX] is selected in Batch change lock screen/ home application.

### [Screen timeout]

- Note that the continuous stand-by time is shortened when increasing the light duration.

### [Auto-rotate screen]

- Auto-rotate screen may not follow the setting depending on the app in use.

### [Screen on/off with motion]

- You can set the display not to be turned off while holding the handset with your hand and set the display to be turned off immediately when placing the handset on a place parallel to the ground by setting Bright Keep.
- If you do not move or operate the handset for a certain period of time, the display may be turned off even while Bright Keep is set and you are holding the handset. Also, when you place the handset on a place parallel to the ground, the display is turned off regardless of the setting of Screen timeout.

### [Font Settings]

- Font may not appear correctly when activating an app downloaded from Google Play etc.

# Brightness

## 1 In the home screen, [⋮] ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Display] ▶ [Brightness]

## 2 Select an item

- **Outdoor view**: Set whether to adjust brightness of the backlight in a bright place.
- **Automatic brightness**: Set whether to automatically adjust brightness of the backlight. When not automatically adjusting, set the brightness manually.
- **Eco backlight control**: Save the electricity consumption of the backlight by adjusting the quality of the display efficiently.

## 3 [OK]

### [Automatic brightness]

- Note that the continuous stand-by time is shortened when increasing the brightness of the screen.

### [Eco backlight control]

- The color may differ by adjusting the quality of the display.

# VeilView

You can prevent others from seeing the display.

## 1 In the home screen, [⋮] ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Display] ▶ [VeilView]

## 2 Select an item

- **VeilView**: Enable VeilView.
- **Switching by motion**: Set whether to enable VeilView by putting your hand over the upper part of the display side.
- **Pattern setting**: Set the display pattern.
- **Improve appearance**: Make an adjustment for how the display looks like when it faces you.

### [VeilView]

- [VeilView] is disabled if the power is turned off.

### [Switching by motion]

- [VeilView] is enabled/disabled when you put your hand over the upper part of the display side while the display is turned on.
- Note that this function may also be operated in the following cases.
  - When the upper part of the display side is covered while you are carrying the handset in a bag, pocket, etc.
  - When you put the handset with the display side turned down
  - When you place an object on the upper part of the display side
- This function may not be operated on horizontal display, during a call, etc.

### [Pattern setting]

- The effect of preventing others from seeing differs depending on the selected patterns.

# Storage

You can check the available space on a microSD Card, the handset, etc., manage the backup, etc.

## 1 In the home screen, [⋮] ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Storage]

## 2 Select an item

- **Mount microSD/Unmount microSD**: Mount/Unmount the microSD Card.
- **Erase microSD**: Format the microSD Card.
- **Unmount USB memory**: Unmount the USB memory.
- **File Management**: Manage data saved on the USB memory.
- **microSD backup**: For details ⓘ P. 57 "microSD backup"

- Precautions about inserting and removing a microSD Card are displayed every time the handset power is turned on.

### [Mount microSD], [Unmount microSD]

- Unmount the microSD Card and turn off the power before inserting/removing the microSD Card.

### [Erase microSD]

- Note that all the data on the microSD Card will be deleted when formatted.

### [Unmount USB memory]

- Unmount the USB memory before removing it.

## USB connection

Change the settings for connecting the handset to a PC using Micro USB Cable 01 (sold separately).

1 In the home screen, [App Drawer] ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Storage] ▶ [Menu] ▶ [USB connection]

### 2 Select an item

- **MTP mode:** This is a mode for transferring data to the handset memory or a microSD Card using a PC compatible with MTP.
- **PTP mode:** This is a mode for transferring still picture to the handset memory using a PC compatible with PTP.
- **Card reader mode:** This is a mode for using microSD Card inserted into the handset as external memory for a PC.

- When you transfer a great deal of data, the transference may be interrupted. In this case, split the data and transfer it.

## Battery & energy saving

You can activate Energy saving settings or Energy save standby, check the battery level, etc.

1 In the home screen, [App Drawer] ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Battery & energy saving]

### 2 Select an item

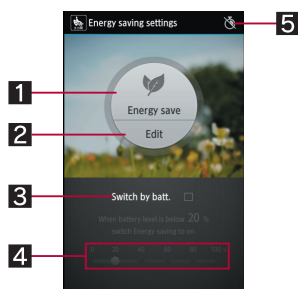
- **Energy saving settings:** For details ☞ P. 61 “Energy saving settings”
- **Energy save standby:** For details ☞ P. 61 “Energy save standby”
- **Battery:** Visually check changes in the remaining battery level, battery consumption level, etc.

## Energy saving settings

Activate Energy saving settings. You can also set to switch to Energy save according to the battery level and the time.

1 In the home screen, [App Drawer] ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Battery & energy saving] ▶ [Energy saving settings]

### 2 Set



#### 1 Energy save

- Switch to Energy save.

#### 2 Edit

- Set the functions to save energy for individually such as Energy saving standby and Energy saving Wi-Fi.

#### 3 Switch by batt.

- Set whether to switch to Energy save when the battery level reaches the specified level.

#### 4 Battery level to switch

- Set the battery level to switch to Energy save at.

#### 5 Switch time

- Set whether to switch to Energy save when specified time arrives.

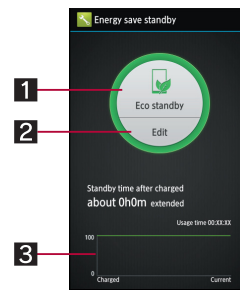
- When [Energy save] is enabled by Switch by batt., [Energy save] is not disabled even when the time set for Switch time arrives.
- When the battery level exceeds the battery level to switch after [Energy save] is enabled by Switch by batt., [Energy save] is disabled.
- When [Energy save] is enabled by Switch by batt., [Energy save] is not disabled even if [Switch by batt.] is disabled.
- When Energy saving standby is set to [ON], it controls the apps that operate in the background while the display is turned off.
- The apps that communicate periodically may not start the communication even if Energy saving standby is set to [OFF]. In this case, set the corresponding app again.
- When Energy saving Wi-Fi is set to [ON], some apps may not be able to connect to the other party's devices properly.

## Energy save standby

You can control the apps that operate in the background while the display is turned off.

1 In the home screen, [App Drawer] ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Battery & energy saving] ▶ [Energy save standby]

### 2 Set



#### 1 Eco standby

- Switch to Eco standby.

#### 2 Edit

- Set apps to control.

#### 3 Battery usage status

- Visually check changes in the remaining battery level, battery consumption level, etc.

## Useful

You can make settings for Recent Apps key or perform Self check or Initial setting.

1 In the home screen, [App Drawer] ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Useful]

### 2 Select an item

- **Recent apps key:** Set a function to use when you touch [Recent Apps]. For details ☞ P. 16 “Operation while using function”
- **Self check:** For details ☞ P. 61 “Self check”
- **Initial setting:** For details ☞ P. 20 “Initial setting”

## Self check

Perform Self check of the handset.

1 In the home screen, [App Drawer] ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Useful] ▶ [Self check]

### 2 [Start checking] ▶ select an item ▶ [Next]

- To restart the handset in safe mode: [Reboot with safe mode] ▶ [OK]
- Touch [Help] of an item to display Help about the diagnosis.

- Warning line or limit line can be set.

- To make a diagnosis on a displayed item: [Start diagnosis]
- To stop a diagnosis: [Cancel] ► [Next item]/[Yes]
- Touch the history of the diagnoses to check the results.

# Application

**Check names, versions, memory usage, etc. of apps, enable/disable apps, uninstall them, etc.**

- 1** In the home screen, [] ► [Settings] ► [Application]

## 2 Select an app

## ■ Disabling an app

Terminate operations of an app and set it not to be displayed on the app screen without uninstalling it.

- You can disable apps which cannot be uninstalled.

- 1** In the home screen, [] ▶ **[Settings]** ▶ **[Application]**

- 2 Select an app ► [Disable] ► [OK]**

- If you disable an app, other apps which link up with the disabled app may not work properly. In this case, enable the app.

## ■ Enabling an app

- 1** In the home screen, [ ] ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Application]

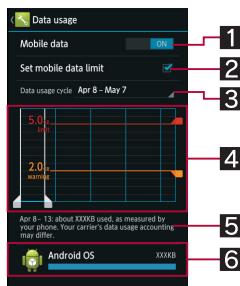
- ## 2 Select an app ► [Enable]

## Data usage

**Measure the volume of data communicated via mobile networks and display it on a diagram. Also, you can set the handset to give you a warning or make data communication no longer available once the communication volume reaches its set limit.**

- 1** In the home screen, [⋮] ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Data usage]

- ## 2 Check the data communication volume



## 1 Mobile data

- Set whether to use data communication.

## 2 Set mobile data limit

- Set the limit on the data communication volume and suspend data communication once the limit is reached.
  - In the data usage screen, [⋮] ▶ [Background restrictions] ▶ [OK] to restrict data communications made by apps running in the background.

### 3 Data usage cycle

- Set the date on which the display of the data communication volume will be reset.

#### 4 Diagram

- Displays the data communication volume.

## Synchronizing data

**You can synchronize data between the handset and online services. You can access personal information stored in online services from the handset and PC, and you can use and update data by synchronizing them.**

## ■ Automatic synchronization

Set whether to automatically synchronize items set in each account.

- You can set items to be automatically synchronized by selecting an account in the screen which is displayed when carrying out the following operations. In the home screen, [88] ▶ [Settings] ▶ select an account.

- 1** In the home screen, [⋮] ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Data usage]

- 2 [  ] ▶ [Auto-sync data] ▶ [OK]

- Register a Google account in advance when you synchronize the phonebook of the handset memory with contacts on the online services even if you synchronize with an account other than Google account.

## ■ Manual synchronization

- When Auto-sync data is disabled, you can synchronize selected items manually.

- 1** In the home screen, [] ► [Settings] ► select an account

- ## 2 Select items to be synchronized

## More

**You can make settings for other functions in WIRELESS & NETWORKS.**

- 1** In the home screen,  ► **[Settings]** ► **[More...]**

- ## 2 Select an item

- **Airplane mode**: Restrict the use of some functions using communication such as call/mail function.
- **Tethering**: For details  P. 22 “Tethering”
- **NFC/Osaifu-Keitai settings**: For details  P. 44 “NFC/Osaifu-Keitai settings”
- **Wireless output(Miracast)**: Connect the handset to a TV with a wireless connection function. For details  P. 75 “TV connection”
- **Home network settings**: For details  P. 75 “Home network settings”
- **VPN settings**: Make settings for VPN. For details  P. 76 “Adding VPN”
- **Mobile networks**: Make settings for use overseas. For details  P. 78 “Settings for use overseas”

[Airplane mode]

- When [Lock SIM card] is enabled, you cannot call to the emergency number (110, 119 or 118). When [Lock SIM card] is disabled, you can call to the emergency number (110, 119 or 118) even in Airplane mode. If you call to the emergency number, [Airplane mode] is disabled and the call is made.
- The Wi-Fi and Bluetooth function can be set to [ON] even when [Airplane mode] is enabled.

## docomo service/cloud

You can make settings for the docomo service/docomo cloud.

### 1 In the home screen, [ ] ▶ [Settings] ▶ [docomo service/cloud]

- Alternatively, in the home screen, [ドコモ設定] (docomo settings) to activate it.

### 2 Select an item

- **docomo ID設定** (Set docomo ID): Set a docomo ID.
- **docomo cloud**: Make settings for docomo cloud.
- **Application manager**: Make settings for the confirmation for updating apps etc.
- **docomo Wi-Fi Easy Connection**: Activate the “docomo Wi-Fi Easy Connection” app.
- **docomo apps password**: Make settings for the password to use for apps DOCOMO provides.
- **AUTO-GPS**: Make settings for AUTO-GPS.
- **docomo location information**: Make settings for the location information service function.
- **Data usage check**: Activate the “データ量確認アプリ” (Data volume checking app) app.
- **Send device error information**: Set whether to send error information to the server.
- **Remote Initialization Service**: Make settings to use services which enable you to collectively delete data on the handset by remote control.
- **Profile setting**: Check or change your profile used in the docomo service.
- **Open source licenses**: Display the open source licenses.

- Some apps displayed in docomo service/cloud can be disabled. The disabled apps may not be displayed in docomo service/cloud.

- When you newly download apps provided by DOCOMO, the downloaded apps may be displayed in docomo service/cloud.

#### [docomo apps password]

- docomo apps password is set to [0000] by default.

## Location services

You can make settings for the way to retrieve location information.

### 1 In the home screen, [ ] ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Location services]

### 2 Select an item

- **Access to my location**: Set whether to permit the use of location information.
- **Use GPS satellites**: Measure location information via GPS satellites.
- **Wi-Fi & mobile network location**: Measure location information via a Wi-Fi access point or base station for mobile phones.

- It is necessary to set Access to my location to [ON] to measure the present location. Some apps require that settings be made for the location information by using the apps.

#### [Use GPS satellites]

- Power consumption of the handset increases.

## Lock & security

You can make settings for the security lock.

### 1 In the home screen, [ ] ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Lock & Security]

### 2 Select an item

- **Screen lock**: Make settings for the unlock method of the touch panel to be activated when the power or display is turned on.
- **NFC screen-unlock settings**: Make settings for unlocking the screen lock via NFC.
- **Owner info**: Make settings for the owner's information to be displayed on the lock screen of the touch panel.
- **Application lock**: For details ⓘ P. 64 “Application lock”
- **Secrecy settings**: For details ⓘ P. 64 “Secrecy settings”
- **Contacts data access monitor**: Restrict apps or services which use the phonebook information.
- **Set up SIM card lock**: For details ⓘ P. 65 “Setting up SIM card lock”
- **Encrypt phone**: For details ⓘ P. 65 “Encrypting phone”
- **Visible passwords**: When you enter the PIN code etc., you can display the entered characters before displaying [·].
- **Device administrator**: Set whether to authorize a device administrator to manage devices.
- **Unknown sources**: Allow installation of apps received via mails, websites other than Google Play, etc.
- **Verify apps**: Prevent installation of apps which may cause damage or set whether to display the confirmation screen before installing apps.
- **Use secure credentials**: Allow access to secure certificates and other credentials.
- **Install from microSD**: Install encrypted certificates from a microSD Card.
- **Clear credentials**: Delete all credentials.

#### [Screen lock]

- If you enter wrong patterns, time during which you cannot enter the pattern gets longer according to how many times you have entered wrong patterns.
  - Five times in a row: 30 seconds
  - Ten times in a row: 1 minute
  - 15 times in a row: 15 minutes
  - 20 times in a row: 60 minutesAfter you have entered wrong patterns 20 times or more in a row, you cannot enter the pattern for 60 minutes each time you enter wrong patterns five times in a row. If you enter the correct pattern, the count is reset.
- If you have set your Google account and entered wrong patterns five times in a row, [Forgot Pattern] is displayed. Unlock the touch panel by signing in with your Google account and set a method for unlocking the touch panel again.
- The following items can be set.
  - None: The lock screen of the touch panel is not displayed.
  - Slide or Touch: Set the touch panel to be unlocked by touching [ ]. When the lock screen is switched, slide [ ] to unlock.
  - Face Unlock: Set the touch panel to be unlocked by using the face recognition function.
  - Pattern: Set a pattern which forms by linking four or more dots.
  - Lock No.: Set four- to sixteen-digit number.
  - Password: Set four to sixteen alphanumerics or half-width symbols including at least one alphabet.
    - Some half-width symbols are not available.

- The following items in Lock & Security may be displayed/hidden depending on the settings in Screen lock.
  - **Improve face matching:** Detect the face again over which face recognition (Face Unlock) is to be carried out.
  - **Liveness check:** Set to unlock the screen by blinking your eyes when face recognition (Face Unlock) is carried out.
  - **Make pattern visible:** Display track for entering a pattern with line.
  - **Automatically lock:** Set how long it takes the touch panel to be locked.
  - **Power key to lock instantly:** Set whether to lock the touch panel regardless of the time set in Automatically lock when you turn off the display by pressing (⏻).

#### [Unknown sources]

- Apps you download from the websites may be of unknown origin. To protect your handset and personal data, download apps only from trusted sources such as Google Play.

#### [Use secure credentials]

- If you delete a certificate, you cannot refer to the certificate from [Use secure credentials] but it can be referred to from other functions. If you want to delete the certificate completely, carry out Clear credentials.

#### [Clear credentials]

- Settings for VPN are also deleted.

## Application lock

- 1 In the home screen, ► [Settings] ► [Lock & Security] ► [Application lock]
- 2 Enter the passcode ► [OK]
- 3 Select an item
  - **Restrict calls:** Restrict making calls.
  - **Make pattern visible:** Display track for entering the finger list with line.
  - **Haptic feedback:** Activate vibration on entering the finger list, passcode and password.
  - **Change security key:** For details P. 65 “Changing security key”

- If you have set any restriction, you need to enter the security key to temporarily disable the restriction.

#### [Restrict calls]

- You can call to the emergency number (110, 119 or 118) even when you set Restrict calls.

## Secrecy settings

You can set contacts in the phonebook not to be displayed in the phonebook, outgoing/incoming call history, etc. by setting the secrecy setting for the contacts.

- When you temporarily disable the secret mode, both normal contacts and contacts for which the secrecy setting is set are displayed.
- If the display is turned off while the secret mode is temporarily disabled, the secret mode is activated.

- 1 In the home screen, ► [Settings] ► [Lock & Security] ► [Secrecy settings]
- 2 Enter the passcode ► [OK]
  - The secret mode is temporarily disabled.
- 3 Select an item
  - **Set contact secrecy:** Set the secrecy setting for contacts in the phonebook.
  - **Disable secret mode temporarily:** Make settings for temporary cancellation of the secret mode.

- **Guide:** Display how to temporarily disable the secret mode and explanation for contacts in the phonebook for which the secrecy setting is set.

### Disabling the secret mode temporarily

- 1 Drag the status bar down
- 2 Touch and hold [ ]
- 3 Enter the passcode ► [OK]

## Security codes used on the handset

Some functions for convenient use of the handset require security codes. In addition to security code used for various handset operations, use security codes such as the network security code when using network services. Use security codes with various functions to fully utilize the handset.

- Entered security code for various functions and PIN code are marked with [-].

### Precautions about various security codes

- Do not use easily estimated numbers for security codes to be set such as “birthday”, “part of a phone number”, “address or room number”, “1111” or “1234”. Keep a separate memo of security codes.
- Keep security codes private. If the security codes are found and improperly used by others, DOCOMO shall not be liable for any loss of the users.
- If you forget your security codes, you are required to bring your identification (a driver’s license etc.), your handset and your docomo mini UIM card to a docomo Shop. For details, contact the number listed in “General Inquiries” on the last page.
- PUK (PIN Unlock Key) is described in the agreement form (customer copy) you received at the time of subscription at a docomo Shop. If you made a subscription at a shop other than a docomo Shop, bring your identification (a driver’s license etc.) and your docomo mini UIM card to a docomo Shop or contact the number listed in “General Inquiries” on the last page.

### Security key (security code for various functions)

If you set any restrictions, you need to enter the security key to temporarily disable them. [Passcode] ([0000]) is set as a security key by default but you can change it ( P. 65 “Changing security key”).

- If you enter the wrong security key five times continuously, you cannot enter it for 30 seconds.

### Network security code

Network security code is a four-digit code required for confirming the subscriber’s identity when an order is received at a docomo Shop, docomo Information Center or “お客様サポート” (Support), used for accessing various network services, etc. You can set any code at the time of subscription but you can change the code. As for those with “docomo ID/password” of the general support website “My docomo” designed for PC (in Japanese only), the registration procedure for a new network security code is available from PC. Alternatively, in the home screen, [dmenu] ► [お客様サポート] (Support) ► [各種お申込・お手続き] (Various Applications/Procedures) to change your network security code.

- Refer to the page second from the last of this manual for details on “My docomo” or “お客様サポート” (Support).

## ■ PIN code

A docomo mini UIM card has a security code called PIN code. This security code is set to [0000] by default but you can change the code (☞ P. 65 “Setting up SIM card lock”).

The PIN code is a four- to eight-digit security code that is entered when a docomo mini UIM card is inserted or when a device is turned on to prevent unauthorized use of the docomo mini UIM card by a third party. Making/Receiving a call and the device operation are enabled by entering PIN code.

- Use the previously set PIN code when inserting a docomo mini UIM card that has been used in another device. It is [0000] if the setting has not been changed.
- If you enter the wrong PIN code three times continuously, it is locked and the docomo mini UIM card becomes unavailable. In this case, unlock with “PUK” (PIN Unlock Key).

## ■ PUK (PIN Unlock Key)

PUK (PIN Unlock Key) is an eight-digit number used to disable the PIN code lock. You cannot change the code.

- If you enter the wrong code ten times continuously, the docomo mini UIM card is completely locked. In this case, contact a docomo Shop.

## Changing security key

- 1 In the home screen, [⌘] ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Lock & Security] ▶ [Application lock]
- 2 Enter the passcode ▶ [OK] ▶ [Change security key]
- 3 Select an item
  - **Finger list**: Set a pattern which forms by linking four or more dots.
  - **Passcode**: Set four- to sixteen-digit number.
  - **Password**: Set four to sixteen alphanumeric or half-width symbols including at least one alphabet.

## Setting up SIM card lock

You can make settings for the PIN code.

- 1 In the home screen, [⌘] ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Lock & Security] ▶ [Set up SIM card lock]
- 2 Select an item
  - **Lock SIM card**: Set whether to enter the PIN code when the power is turned on.
  - **Change SIM PIN**: Change the PIN code.

- In Japan, you cannot make a call to the emergency number (110, 119 or 118) when a docomo mini UIM card is not inserted, while the PIN code is locked or from the PUK (PIN Unlock Key) entry screen.

- The setting is saved on the docomo mini UIM card.

## Disabling PIN lock

- 1 In the PIN locking screen, enter PUK (PIN Unlock Key)
- 2 Enter the new PIN code
- 3 Enter the new PIN code again

## Encrypting phone

### Encrypt data on the handset.

- If you encrypt data on the handset, the password entry screen for decrypting the storage is displayed every time the power is turned on. Enter the lock number or password set in Screen lock.
- Carry out Reset all to disable the encryption (☞ P. 66 “Reset all”).
- Carry out the operations while charging the battery with its battery level still left sufficiently.
- Set Screen lock to Lock No. or Password in advance (☞ P. 63 “Lock & security”).

- 1 In the home screen, [⌘] ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Lock & Security] ▶ [Encrypt phone]

- 2 [Encrypt phone] ▶ enter the lock number/ password ▶ [Next]

- 3 [Encrypt phone]

- In the password entry screen for decrypting the storage, you cannot make a call to the emergency number (110, 119 or 118).
- Note that all data on the handset are deleted if the encryption is interrupted.
- If you enter wrong lock numbers/passwords ten or 20 times in a row when decrypting the storage, you cannot enter the lock number/password for 30 seconds. Note that if you enter wrong lock numbers/passwords 30 times in a row, the handset is initialized.

## Language & input

You can make settings for the language displayed on the screen, character entry, text-to-speech, etc.

- 1 In the home screen, [⌘] ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Language & input]

- 2 Select an item

- **Select language**: Select Japanese/English.
- **Spell checker**: Set whether to use Spell checker.
- **Personal dictionary**: Register any words in the dictionary and display them as conversion candidates when you enter characters with Google Keyboard.
- **Default**: Set the input software to use when entering characters.
- **Google Keyboard**: Make settings for Google Keyboard.
- **Google voice typing**: Set whether to use Google voice typing.
- **iWnn IME - SH edition**: Make settings for iWnn IME - SH edition. For details on each item that can be set ☞ P. 18 “Setting character entry”
- **Moji-Henshu**: Set whether to use Moji-Henshu.
- **Voice Search**: Make settings for the voice input.
- **Text-to-speech output**: Make settings for the voice for reading the characters displayed on the handset.
- **Pointer speed**: Set the speed of the pointer.
- Touch [⌘] to set the details of each item.

- Text-to-speech is enabled by downloading voice data, accessibility option, etc.

- Voice data that is installed by default does not include Japanese.

### Keyboard

- When you enter Japanese, use iWnn IME - SH edition.

### [Spell checker], [Personal dictionary]

- Japanese is not supported.

## Backup & reset

Perform Reset all or transfer data.

**1** In the home screen, [ ] ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Backup & reset]

**2** Select an item

- **Reset all:** For details ⓘ P. 66 “Reset all”
- **Data transfer:** For details ⓘ P. 66 “Data transfer”

### Reset all

Erase all data on the handset memory.

**1** In the home screen, [ ] ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Backup & reset] ▶ [Reset all]

**2** [Reset phone] ▶ enter the passcode ▶ [OK] ▶ [Erase everything]

- You can also erase data on a microSD Card at the same time by enabling [Delete data in microSD as well.].

- The following data are erased.

- Data that are created, saved or registered
- Contents that are set in the “Settings” app
- Downloaded apps

- If you erase an app installed by default, download it from the manufacturer’s website. Check the product information on the following website.

<http://3sh.jp/> (in Japanese only)

### Data transfer

You can import data or back up data on the handset using a microSD Card. In addition, you can import phonebook data on other devices using the Bluetooth function.

**1** In the home screen, [ ] ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Backup & reset] ▶ [Data transfer]

- Alternatively, in the home screen, [データ引継] (Data transfer) to activate it.

**2** Select an item

- **Data import:** Import data using a microSD Card or the Bluetooth function. For details on importing data from a microSD Card ⓘ P. 57 “Restoring backup file”
- **Save data to microSD:** Save data on a microSD Card. For details on saving data on a microSD Card ⓘ P. 57 “Saving backup file”
- **Function information:** Check how to use Data transfer.

■ **Importing phonebook data using Bluetooth function**

**1** In the data transferring screen, [Data import]

**2** Select the type of a device from which you import data

- When the screen asking whether to use the backup data on the microSD Card is displayed, select [Import phonebook data from smartphone.].

**3** [Next]

**4** Enable the Bluetooth function of the device from which you import data ▶ [Next]

**5** Select the device from which you import data ▶ [Start]

- When the confirmation screen about the settings on pairing appears, select [Pair].

- When the device from which you import data is Android, set the device so that the name of the device is displayed on the handset.

**6** [Next]

**7** [Add registration]/[Delete before registration] ▶ [OK]

- If there are multiple accounts, the screen for selecting to which account to register is displayed.

**8** [OK]

## Date & time

You can make settings for the date and time and their format.

**1** In the home screen, [ ] ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Date & time]

**2** Select an item

- **Automatic date & time:** Set whether to automatically adjust the date and time.
- **Auto timezone:** Set whether to use the time zone provided via a network.
- **Set date:** Set the date manually.
- **Set time:** Set the time manually.
- **Select time zone:** Set the time zone manually.
- **Use 24-hour format:** Switch 12-hour format/24-hour format.
- **Choose date format:** Set the date format to display.

**When [Automatic date & time] is enabled**

- If the handset does not adjust the time for a while after the power is turned on, turn off the power and restart it.
- Time may not be adjusted depending on the signal status.
- The clock may gain or lose a few seconds.

## Accessibility

You can make settings for accessibility options.

**1** In the home screen, [ ] ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Accessibility]

**2** Select an item

- **Magnification gestures:** Set whether to zoom in/out the screen by tapping the display three times.
- **Large text:** Set whether to display fonts on the handset in large size.
- **Power button ends call:** Set whether to end a call by pressing .
- **Auto-rotate screen:** Set whether to switch the screen to horizontal/vertical display when rotating the handset 90° to the left/right.
- **Speak passwords:** Set whether to use voice output for passwords.
- **Accessibility shortcut:** Set whether the accessibility functions can be enabled quickly.
- **Text-to-speech output:** Make settings for the voice for reading the characters displayed on the handset.
- **Touch & hold delay:** Set how long you need to keep touching.
- **Enhance web accessibility:** Set whether to permit to install web scripts.

# Device info

Check the information about the handset.

**1** In the home screen, [App Drawer] ► [Settings] ► [Device info]

**2** Select an item

- **Build number:** You can check the build number.
- **Status:** You can check the battery level, network in use, etc.
- **Adjust touch panel:** Adjust the touch panel.
- **Adjust sensitivity of sensor:** Adjust the accuracy of retrieval by the motion sensor and geomagnetic sensor.
- **Software update:** For details ⓘ P. 83 “Updating software”
- **Upgrade Android software:** Upgrade the Android version. For details ⓘ P. 85 “Android version upgrade”
- **Legal information:** You can check copyright notice, terms of service, etc.
- **Authentication:** You can check information such as the certification of conformity with technical regulations.
- **Model number:** You can check the model number.
- **Android version:** You can check the Android version.
- **Baseband version:** You can check the baseband version.
- **Kernel version:** You can check the kernel version.

## [Adjust touch panel]

- Do not touch the touch panel (display) or , while [DO NOT TOUCH the display.] is displayed.  
The adjustment may be failed since the sensitivity adjustment for the whole touch panel is being performed.

## [Adjust sensitivity of sensor]

- Make the adjustment approximately 10 seconds after the adjustment screen appears.
- Adjustment may be failed depending on surroundings or other simultaneously running apps. Change the place where you make adjustment, end running apps, etc.

## Storage structure

### Handset memory (internal storage)

Default folder structure of the handset memory and types of data saved in each folder are as follows.

|               |                                                      |
|---------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| Alarms        | Alarm tones etc. are saved.                          |
| Android       | Temporary files etc. of installed apps are saved.    |
| DCIM          | Still pictures shot with the handset are saved.      |
| Download      | Files downloaded on the browser are saved.           |
| Movies        | Videos etc. are saved.                               |
| Music         | Music data etc. is saved.                            |
| Notifications | Notification sounds etc. are saved.                  |
| Pictures      | Still pictures etc. are saved.                       |
| Podcasts      | Music data etc. transferred from a podcast is saved. |
| PRIVATE       | Still pictures, videos, music data, etc. are saved.  |
| Ringtones     | Ringtones etc. are saved.                            |

### microSD Card (external storage)

You can save data on the handset to microSD Card or import data on microSD Card to the handset.

- SH-02F is compatible with commercially available microSD Card of up to 2 GB, microSDHC Card of up to 32 GB and microSDXC Card of up to 64 GB. Also, as for Speed Class\*, Class 10 or lower is available (as of January 2014).

\* Speed Class as stated above indicates the performance of a microSD Card. Note that all the operations related to the performance indicated by Speed Class are not completely guaranteed.

For information on the microSD Card, refer to the following website.

[http://k-tai.sharp.co.jp/support/d/sh-02f/peripherals.html#!/microsd\\_support](http://k-tai.sharp.co.jp/support/d/sh-02f/peripherals.html#!/microsd_support) (in Japanese only)

Ask the manufacturers of microSD Cards that are not provided in the website for information on such microSD Cards.

Note that the provided information is the information checked for operation. DOCOMO shall not guarantee all operations.

- The size of a file that can be used is up to 2 GB.
- Do not turn off the handset immediately after inserting the microSD Card in the handset (while writing information needed for the handset operation) or while editing data on the microSD Card. Data may be damaged or operation may not work properly.
- Format unformatted microSD Cards on the handset before use (☞ P. 60 “Storage”). microSD Cards formatted by PCs or other devices may not be used properly on the handset.
- Data saved on the microSD Cards from other devices may not be displayed or played on the handset. Some data saved on the microSD Card from the handset may not be displayed or played on other devices.
- microSDXC Card can be used only on the devices compatible with SDXC. If you insert a microSDXC Card to devices not compatible with SDXC, data saved on the microSDXC Card may be damaged etc., so do not insert it.
- For using a microSDXC Card with its data damaged again, formatting the microSDXC Card by devices compatible with SDXC is required (all the data will be deleted).

- For copying data to/from among devices not compatible with SDXC, use a card which conforms to the standard of the devices you copy the data to/from such as microSDHC Card or microSD Card.
- Back up the data saved on a microSD Card and store in another place. DOCOMO shall not be liable for any loss or change of the saved data.
- Before inserting or removing (including after unmounting) the microSD Card, turn off the power, position the back facing upwards and remove the back cover (☞ P. 12 “Removing back cover”). Hold the handset securely with your hand. Data may be damaged or operation may not work properly. After inserting or removing the microSD Card, attach the back cover (☞ P. 13 “Attaching back cover”).
- Precautions about inserting and removing a microSD Card are displayed every time the handset power is turned on.

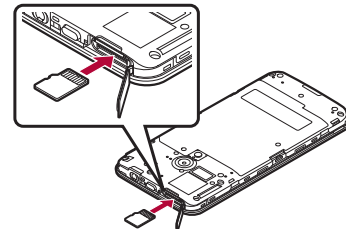
### Inserting microSD Card

- 1 Open the docomo mini UIM card/microSD Card slot cover (☞ P. 13 “Inserting docomo mini UIM card”)
- 2 Insert the microSD Card slowly into the microSD Card slot with the metal terminal side turned up

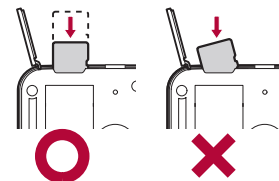
- The microSD Card slot is below the docomo mini UIM card slot. When you insert the microSD Card before inserting the docomo mini UIM card, be careful not to insert the microSD Card to the docomo mini UIM card slot.



- Insert the microSD Card slowly with your fingers until a click is heard.



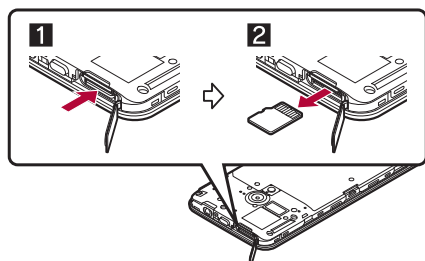
- Do not force the microSD Card in at an angle or with the wrong side up. The microSD Card slot may be damaged.



- 3 Close the docomo mini UIM card/microSD Card slot cover (☞ P. 13 “Inserting docomo mini UIM card”)

## ■ Removing microSD Card

- 1 Open the docomo mini UIM card/microSD Card slot cover (☞ P. 13 “Inserting docomo mini UIM card”)
- 2 Gently push the microSD Card towards inside (1)
  - Push the microSD Card until a click is heard. It will come out towards you. Pulling it forcibly may damage the handset or the microSD Card.
- 3 Remove the microSD Card (2)
  - Remove the microSD Card by slowly pulling it straight out.

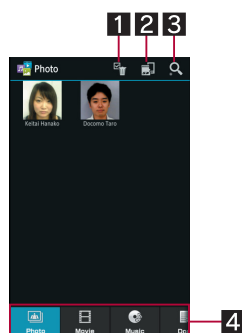


- 4 Close the docomo mini UIM card/microSD Card slot cover (☞ P. 13 “Inserting docomo mini UIM card”)

## Contents Manager

You can manage the data saved on the handset memory or a microSD Card, classify them by type and display them.

- 1 In the home screen, [ ] ► [Contents Manager]
  - Alternatively, in the home screen, [SH tool] ► [Recommendation] ► [Contents Manager] to activate it.
- 2 Select data
  - When a corresponding app has already been installed, select the data to display it.
  - When there are multiple corresponding apps installed on the handset, the app selection screen may appear. Select an app to display the data.



## 4 Category

- The data in the selected category is displayed.

| Category | Displayed data                                                                        |
|----------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Photo    | Still pictures shot with the handset or downloaded images                             |
| Movie    | Videos shot with the handset or downloaded videos                                     |
| Music    | Data recorded with the handset, melodies or WMA files                                 |
| Doc.     | Office type data (.doc, .xls, .ppt, .docx, .xlsx, .pptx, .csv), PDF data or Text file |
| Others   | Other data                                                                            |

- Slide it to the left/right to switch displays of category.

### 1 Data deleting

- Select and delete data.

### 2 Save destination

- Data saved on the selected destination are displayed.

### 3 Data searching

- Search for data on the handset memory or a microSD Card by selecting search criteria.

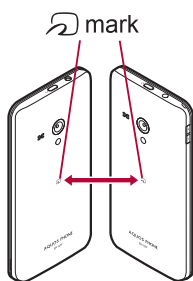
## iC communication

### Using iC communication

You can send and receive data to and from other devices equipped with iC communication function.

- Make the initial setting of Osaifu-Keitai in advance (P. 44 “Using “Osaifu-Keitai compatible services”).
- iC communication is not available during NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock.
- Data cannot be sent by iC communication in Airplane mode.
- In the following cases, data may not be sent by iC communication.
  - During charging
  - During earphone/microphone connection
  - During USB connection
- You can send and receive phonebooks, My profile, bookmarks, still pictures, videos, data recorded with the voice recorder, etc.

#### ■ When using iC communication



- Use while placing the mark of the receiver's device over that of the sender's device as shown.
- Do not move the handset until sending and receiving of data are completed.
- There may be some cases in which data are poorly sent and received or the screen is off by positioning the handset near depending on the other party's device. In this case, put a distance between the marks apart/closer or move them up/down or to the left/right.

### Sending and receiving by iC

To enter authentication code is required for sending and receiving all data items. The authentication code is a password exclusive to iC communication. Before starting data communication, the sender and receiver must enter the same user-specified four-digit code. In addition, to enter passcode may be required for sending all data items.

#### ■ Sending data

**Example: Still picture**

- 1 In the home screen, [Grid] ▶ [Contents Manager] ▶ [Photo]
- 2 Touch and hold a still picture ▶ [Share] ▶ [Send by iC]
- 3 [Ok]
- 4 Place the mark over that of the other party's device

#### ■ Receiving data

- 1 Place the mark over that of the other party's device
- 2 [Accept]
- 3 Drag the status bar down ▶ select the received data

## Bluetooth function

You can connect the handset to Bluetooth devices wirelessly.

- Wireless communications with all the Bluetooth devices are not completely guaranteed.

#### ■ Specifications

##### ■ Supported version

Bluetooth standard Ver.4.0\*1

##### ■ Output

Bluetooth standard Power Class 2

##### ■ Supported profiles\*2 (Supported services)

HSP: Headset Profile\*3

HFP: Hands Free Profile\*4

A2DP: Advanced Audio Distribution Profile\*5

AVRCP: Audio/Video Remote Control Profile\*5

HID: Human Interface Device Profile\*6

DUN: Dial-up Networking Profile\*7

OPP: Object Push Profile\*8

SPP: Serial Port Profile\*9

PBAP: Phone Book Access Profile\*10

PAN: Personal Area Networking Profile\*11

HDP: Health Device Profile\*12

PXP: Proximity Profile\*13

FMP: Find Me Profile\*14

ANP: Alert Notification Profile\*15

PASP: Phone Alert Status Profile\*16

TIP: Time Profile\*17

- \*1 The handset and all Bluetooth function-installed devices have ensured that they conform to the Bluetooth specification according to the rules that the Bluetooth SIG defines, and are all authenticated. However, operating methods might differ or data might not be exchanged even when they are connected wirelessly, depending on the features or specifications of connected devices.
- \*2 Standardizes the communication procedures of Bluetooth device per feature of a device.
- \*3 Connect a commercially available Bluetooth compatible headset to the handset to talk wirelessly.
- \*4 Connect a commercially available Bluetooth compatible hands-free device such as a car navigation system to the handset to talk during hands-free operation using the car navigation system etc.
- \*5 Connect a commercially available Bluetooth compatible audio device to the handset to play music, 1Seg audio, etc. wirelessly. Also, remote control operation may be available from Bluetooth devices. However, compatible devices may be limited depending on the data type.
- \*6 Operate the handset from a commercially available input device compatible with Bluetooth such as a keyboard and mouse by connecting one to the handset via Bluetooth.
- \*7 Connect a Bluetooth compatible PC etc. to the handset via Bluetooth to use the handset as a modem and make data communications. Note that packet communication charges are incurred. You cannot use mobile networks on the handset during DUN connection.
- \*8 Connect a Bluetooth device to the handset with the file transfer service to send and receive data between them.

- \*9 Set the virtual connection with a serial cable and interconnect between devices.
- \*10 Transfer phonebook data on the handset memory to a Bluetooth device. Data may not be displayed correctly on the other party's device depending on the contents of the transferred phonebook data.
- \*11 Join a PC network etc. and share the Internet connection.
- \*12 Communicate data with a commercially available health appliance compatible with Bluetooth such as a weighing machine.
- \*13 Make a Bluetooth device ring or vibrate when the Bluetooth connection is terminated after it is moved away from the handset.
- \*14 Make the handset/a Bluetooth device ring or vibrate by operating the handset/the Bluetooth device.
- \*15 Notify you of incoming calls, new mails, etc. through a Bluetooth device.
- \*16 Stop the ringtone or the vibrator of the handset by operating a Bluetooth device.
- \*17 Synchronize clocks between a Bluetooth device and the handset.

- Refer to the manual for the Bluetooth device as well.
- The settings of access points for DUN profile can be changed from a Bluetooth device such as a PC or car navigation system. If connection to an access point via DUN profile becomes unavailable, it is recommended to initialize access points (P. 21 "Resetting an access point").
- You may not hear 1Seg audio etc. with Bluetooth devices which are not compatible with SCMS-T.

### Precautions about handling the Bluetooth device

Note the followings when using the Bluetooth device.

- Note the followings to make good connection.
  - Keep the distance between the handset and another Bluetooth device within approximately 10 m with no obstructions in sight. The distance within which you can make connection may be shorter when there are obstructions between them or depending on the conditions of the surroundings (such as walls or furniture) and the structure of a building. Especially when there is a wall or floor of reinforced concrete between them, they may be unable to connect with each other. Note the above mentioned distance is not guaranteed.
  - Move the handset and another Bluetooth device as far away as possible from home electric appliances, AV devices, OA devices, etc. before connection. The Bluetooth device is liable to be adversely affected by a microwave oven, so move it as far away as possible from the microwave oven while using it. Otherwise, normal connection cannot be performed when other electric devices are powered on or Bluetooth devices may cause noises or reception failure on a TV or radio set.
  - Move the Bluetooth device to a place where connection is possible when there is a broadcast station or radio near the Bluetooth device and the handset cannot be connected to the device. Strong radio waves may prevent connection between Bluetooth devices.
  - Wireless connection is available with Bluetooth device put in a bag or pocket. However, lowering of communication speed or noise may result when you are in between the Bluetooth device and the handset.

- Electromagnetic signals from the Bluetooth device may affect the operation of electronic medical equipment etc. As some cases may result in accident, turn off the handset and other Bluetooth devices in the following place.
  - On trains ■ On airplanes ■ In hospitals
  - Near automatic doors or fire alarms
  - In places such as gas stations where flammable gas is generated

### The radio interference with Wi-Fi compatible devices

- The Bluetooth devices use the same frequency band (2.4 GHz) as wireless LANs (IEEE 802.11b/g/n). Therefore, using the Bluetooth device near a wireless LAN device may cause the radio interference, lowering of communication speed, noise or connection failure. In this case, turn off the wireless LAN device or keep the handset and the Bluetooth device at least approximately 10 m away from the wireless LAN.

## Using Bluetooth function

- To register/connect a Bluetooth device, the Bluetooth passkey may need to be entered. Before starting the registration, decide one- to sixteen-digit number. Enter the same number on the handset and the other party's Bluetooth device.
- Set the other party's Bluetooth device to the registration stand-by status in advance.

**1 In the home screen, [ ] ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Bluetooth]**

**2 Slide [OFF] to the right**

**3 Select a Bluetooth device ▶ [Pair]**

- The confirmation screen for connection may be displayed.
- Entering the Bluetooth passkey may be necessary depending on the other party's Bluetooth device. Also, some Bluetooth devices may start connecting after completing registration.
- To display/hide the handset's name on other Bluetooth devices: [SH-02F]
  - The handset name is automatically hidden when the period of time set for Visibility timeout has passed.
- To search for Bluetooth devices: [SEARCH FOR DEVICES]
- Touch [ ] of a paired Bluetooth device to change the name and the connection type of the other party's Bluetooth device.

- You can connect up to seven Bluetooth devices at the same time. Bluetooth devices may not work properly or the number of Bluetooth devices which can be connected at the same time may differ depending on the profile.
- If you fail to connect, connection may become available after re-registration of Bluetooth devices.
- When the Bluetooth function is set to [ON], the handset is set to receive a registration request/connection request from other Bluetooth devices. Make the setting for displaying the handset's information on other Bluetooth devices in advance to allow the handset to be searched for by other Bluetooth devices.
- While in connection stand-by, even if a connection request from a Bluetooth device is received, connection may not be made depending on the signal status etc.
- For details on the operations of the other party's Bluetooth device, refer to the manuals of the Bluetooth device to be used.

- When receiving registration request from Bluetooth device or connection request from unregistered Bluetooth device

- 1 Registration request/Connection request from Bluetooth device
- 2 Drag the status bar down ► [Pairing request] ► [Pair]
  - When the confirmation screen about the settings on pairing appears, select [Pair].
  - Entering the Bluetooth passkey may be necessary depending on the other party's Bluetooth device.
  - The confirmation screen for connection may be displayed.

#### ■ Disabling registration of Bluetooth device

- 1 In the Bluetooth screen, [🔗] of the Bluetooth device to unregister ► [Unpair]

#### ■ Disabling connection of Bluetooth device

- 1 In the Bluetooth screen, select the Bluetooth device to disconnect ► [OK]

#### ■ Setting Bluetooth

- Set after setting the Bluetooth function to [ON].
- 1 In the Bluetooth screen, [☰]
  - 2 Select an item
    - **Rename phone**: Change the handset's name.
    - **Visibility timeout**: Set how long the handset's information will be displayed on the other party's Bluetooth device.
    - **aptX**: Set whether to use aptX®.
    - **Handsfree setting**: Set whether to always have voices emitted from the connected Bluetooth compatible hands-free device during a voice call.
    - **Disable BT Smart settings**: Enable/Disable the BT Smart settings.
    - **Show received files**: Display the history of data received via Bluetooth connection.

##### [aptX]

- When you enable [aptX], sounds may not be emitted depending on the Bluetooth device. In this case, disable [aptX].

## Sending and receiving by Bluetooth

#### ■ Sending data

##### Example: Still picture

- 1 In the home screen, [📁] ► [Contents Manager] ► [Photo]
- 2 Touch and hold a still picture ► [Share] ► [Bluetooth]
  - Set the receiver's Bluetooth device to receive data.
- 3 Select a Bluetooth device to connect to

#### ■ Receiving data

- 1 Data is sent from the sender's Bluetooth device
- 2 Drag the status bar down ► select the incoming notification ► [Accept]
- 3 Drag the status bar down ► select the received data

- Note that if you select [Delete and register] when receiving all data, all data registered to the target function are deleted.
- Some data cannot be received all.
- When available space in the save destination becomes insufficient while receiving data, the data being received to that point are saved and receiving ends.

## Bluetooth Smart device connection

You can make a Bluetooth Smart device respond to the handset operations or notify you of incoming calls or new mails by operating the handset if you connect the handset to the Bluetooth Smart device.

#### ■ Notifying this device

If you have connected the handset to a Bluetooth Smart device, you can make the Bluetooth Smart device ring or vibrate by operating the handset.

- 1 In the Bluetooth screen, [🔗] of a connected Bluetooth Smart device ► [Notify this device]
- 2 Select a notification method

- This is available only on Bluetooth Smart devices supporting FMP (Find Me Profile).

#### ■ Advanced settings

You can make settings for operations available when the handset is connected to a Bluetooth Smart device.

- 1 In the Bluetooth screen, [🔗] of a connected Bluetooth Smart device ► [Advanced settings]
- 2 Select an item
  - **Incoming call notification**: Set whether to notify you through the Bluetooth Smart device when receiving a call.
  - **Mail reception notification**: Set whether to notify you through the Bluetooth Smart device when receiving a mail.
  - **Alarm notification**: Set whether to notify you through the Bluetooth Smart device when an alarm rings.
  - **Schedule notification**: Set whether to notify you of schedule notifications from the calendar through the Bluetooth Smart device.
  - **Time change notification**: Set whether to synchronize clocks between the Bluetooth Smart device and the handset.
  - **Link loss notification**: Set how to notify you when the Bluetooth connection is temporarily disabled.

## NFC communication

NFC stands for Near Field Communication and is a near field wireless communication system which conforms to the international standards set by ISO (International Organization for Standardization). You can use the contactless IC card function, reader/writer function (R/W), Peer to Peer function (P2P), etc. on the handset.

### Android beam

You can send and receive data to and from devices which support Reader/Writer, P2P function.

- Enable [Reader/Writer, P2P] and set Android beam to [ON] in advance (☞ P. 44 “NFC/Osaifu-Keitai settings”).
- Android beam is not available when NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock is set.
- Android beam may not be available depending on the app.
- Communication with all devices which support Reader/Writer, P2P function is not completely guaranteed.
- The precautions about using Android beam are the same as those about iC communication (☞ P. 70 “When using iC communication”).
- Other precautions are the same as those for when you hold the handset over the other device (☞ P. 44 “Precautions about holding over the other device”).

#### ■ Sending data

**Example: Phonebook**

- 1 In the home screen, [☐☐] ▶ [docomo phonebook] ▶ [Contacts] ▶ select a name
- 2 Place the  mark over that of the other party's device
  - [Touch to beam] appears.
  - If “License Agreement” is displayed, check the content, follow the instructions on the screen and operate.
- 3 Touch the screen

#### ■ Receiving data

- 1 Place the  mark over that of the other party's device

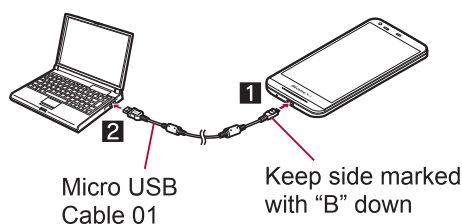
# External Device Connection

## PC connection

### Connecting the handset and PC

- 1 Insert the microUSB plug of Micro USB Cable 01 (sold separately) horizontally into the external connector terminal on the handset with the side marked with “B” turned down (1)
- 2 Insert the USB plug of Micro USB Cable 01 horizontally into the USB connector on a PC (2)

- For details on the mode of USB connection refer to P. 61 “USB connection”



- Use Micro USB Cable 01 as a USB cable. USB cables for PC are not available, since the plug shape is different.
- Using a USB HUB may prevent the equipment from working normally.
- Do not remove Micro USB Cable 01 while exchanging data with PC. Data may be damaged.
- Windows XP, Windows Vista, Windows 7 and Windows 8 all of which are Japanese version are available OS of PCs for the connection.

### microSD reader/writer

You can use a microSD Card inserted into the handset as external memory for a PC.

- Insert a microSD Card and set the mode of USB connection to [Card reader mode] in advance (refer to P. 61 “USB connection”).
- When using a microSDXC Card, refer to P. 74 “Transferring data”. When a message indicating to format the microSDXC Card is displayed, do not format it.

- 1 Connect the handset to a PC via Micro USB Cable 01
  - The USB mass storage screen appears. If the screen does not appear, drag the status bar down and select [USB connected].
- 2 [Turn on USB storage]
  - When the confirmation screen is displayed, check the content and select [OK].
- 3 Use as a microSD reader/writer
- 4 Perform secure hardware removal on the PC after use
- 5 [Turn off USB storage]
- 6 Disconnect Micro USB Cable 01 from the handset and the PC

- While using as a microSD reader/writer, microSD Card cannot be used by other apps. In addition, microSD Card may not be used as a microSD reader/writer while it is used by other apps.

## Transferring data

Transfer data from a PC to the handset memory or a microSD Card.

- Set the mode of USB connection to [MTP mode] or [PTP mode] in advance (refer to P. 61 “USB connection”).

- 1 Connect the handset to a PC via Micro USB Cable 01
- 2 Transfer data
- 3 Disconnect Micro USB Cable 01 from the handset and the PC after use

## Wireless print

You can print browser screens or images using Wi-Fi compatible printers provided by Canon or EPSON.

- For details on the Wi-Fi compatible printers for the handset etc., refer to the following websites.  
Canon: <http://cweb.canon.jp/pixus/index.html> (in Japanese only)  
EPSON: <http://www.epson.jp/products/colorio/> (in Japanese only)
- For the operation method of the Wi-Fi compatible printers, refer to the manuals of the Wi-Fi compatible printers.
- Set Wi-Fi to [ON] and connect to the same access point as that of the Wi-Fi compatible printers in advance (refer to P. 21 “Wi-Fi settings”).
- The file formats of images which can be printed are JPEG, BMP and PNG. Available printers may differ depending on the file format.

## Wireless print settings

### ■ Canon Wi-Fi compatible printer settings

- 1 In the browser screen/image displaying screen of Album, [Menu] ▶ [Wireless print] ▶ [Canon Wi-Fi Printer]/[Canon Wi-Fi printer]
  - If the confirmation screen for the license agreement is displayed, check the content and select [Agree].
  - As for the browser screen, [Print] ▶ select a page range ▶ [OK] to set the page range.

### 2 Set each item

- **Printer:** Set the printer.
- **Paper Settings:** Set the media type.
- **Copies:** Set the number of copies.

### 3 [Print]

### ■ EPSON Wi-Fi compatible printer settings

- 1 In the browser screen/image displaying screen of Album, [Menu] ▶ [Wireless print] ▶ [EPSON Wi-Fi Printer]/[EPSON Wi-Fi printer]
  - If the confirmation screen for the license agreement is displayed, check the content and select [OK].

### 2 Set each item

- **Printer:** Set the printer.
- **Paper Size:** Set the paper size.
- **Media Type:** Set the media type.
- **Layout:** Set the layout.

- **Print Quality:** Set the print quality.
- **Copies:** Set the number of copies.
- **Printing Range:** Set the page range. You can set it only on the browser screen.
- **Advanced Settings:** Set the paper feeder, color, two-sided printing, etc.

### 3 [Done]

## Printing

### ■ Printing by Canon Wi-Fi compatible printer

- Make settings for a Canon Wi-Fi compatible printer in advance (P. 74 “Canon Wi-Fi compatible printer settings”).

#### 1 In the browser screen/image displaying screen of Album, [≡] ▶ [Wireless print] ▶ [Canon Wi-Fi Printer]/[Canon Wi-Fi printer]

#### 2 [Print]

- As for the browser screen, [Print] ▶ select a page range ▶ [OK] to set the page range.

### ■ Printing by EPSON Wi-Fi compatible printer

- Make settings for an EPSON Wi-Fi compatible printer in advance (P. 74 “EPSON Wi-Fi compatible printer settings”).

#### 1 In the browser screen/image displaying screen of Album, [≡] ▶ [Wireless print] ▶ [EPSON Wi-Fi Printer]/[EPSON Wi-Fi printer]

- To change the settings: [⚙] ▶ set each item ▶ [Done]

#### 2 [Print]

- When printing the browser screen, the printed contents may differ from the contents displayed on the browser.

## Home network settings

Using Wi-Fi connection, you can watch the still pictures and the videos and listen to the music data on a microSD Card with TV compliant to the home network.

- You can make public the following data managed by Contents Manager.

| Data type       | File format                                       |
|-----------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| Still picture*1 | JPEG                                              |
| Video           | MP4, 3GP (Video codecs: H.264, Audio codecs: aac) |
| Music data*2    | MP3, LPCM (44.1 kHz/2ch), WAV (44.1 kHz/2ch)      |

\*1 Still pictures whose image size is larger than “4096×4096” cannot be displayed.

\*2 WAV files can be played only when their data format is LPCM. Also, LPCM is not displayed on the handset.

- You may not make data public when the number of each data exceeds 1,000.

- Store the data to make public in the following folders on a microSD Card in advance.

| Data type     | Folder location                                     |
|---------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| Still picture | ¥DCIM,<br>¥PRIVATE¥SHARP¥CM¥PICTURE                 |
| Video         | ¥DCIM,<br>¥PRIVATE¥SHARP¥CM¥MOVIE                   |
| Music data    | ¥PRIVATE¥SHARP¥CM¥MUSIC,<br>¥PRIVATE¥SHARP¥CM¥SOUND |

- Make settings for the Wi-Fi connection before using the home network server. For details on the settings of Wi-Fi (P. 21 “Wi-Fi settings”).
- Refer to the following website for types of TV compliant to connection with the handset.  
<http://k-tai.sharp.co.jp/support/d/sh-02f/peripherals.html#!/dlna> (in Japanese only)
- For the operation method of connecting to the handset from TV compliant to the home network, refer to the manual of TV compliant to the home network.
- Connection may not be made properly or may be canceled while in use depending on wireless LAN access points or using condition. In this case, disable [Home network server] in Home network settings and enable it again.
- Check the followings when you cannot connect properly.
  - Access point settings
  - Wi-Fi connecting condition
  - Network settings of the home network compatible device to connect
  - Security software/Firewall settings of the home network compatible device
  - Home network settings of the handset
  - Settings of Energy saving Wi-Fi

#### 1 In the home screen, [⚙] ▶ [Settings] ▶ [More...] ▶ [Home network settings]

#### 2 Select an item

- **Home network server:** Set whether to use the home network server.
- **Wi-Fi for home NW server:** Set the network to be used from the access points set for Wi-Fi connection.
- **Home network server name:** Register the home network server name to be displayed on TV compliant to the home network.

## USB host function

The USB host function is installed on the handset. You can use USB devices such as mice by connecting a commercially available USB cable for peripheral device connection to the external connector terminal.

- For details on the USB host function, refer to the manuals of the USB cable for peripheral device connection and USB devices.

- Connection with all USB devices is not completely guaranteed.
- Connection with the USB device is disabled when the battery level decreases or the handset temperature lowers.
- When you use the USB host function, the handset operations may slow down.
- When you connect USB devices which consume large amount of electric power, the handset may be automatically turned off depending on the operating state or battery level of the handset, or surrounding temperature.

### Removing USB memory

- Unmount the USB memory before removing it (P. 60 “Storage”). Data may be damaged or the handset may not work properly.

## TV connection

You can display the same screen as that of the handset on a TV with a wireless connection function by connecting the handset to the TV.

#### 1 In the home screen, [⚙] ▶ [Settings] ▶ [More...] ▶ [Wireless output(Miracast)]

## 2 Slide [OFF] to the right

## 3 Select a TV

- The setting screen may be displayed depending on the TV to connect to. For details on the setting content, refer to the manual of a TV you use.

- Wireless output may not be available depending on the running app or the displayed contents.
- Wireless output may be terminated during its use depending on the running app.
- During the wireless output, you may not be able to play copyrighted contents.
- Wireless output automatically stops when the battery level becomes insufficient.
- Wireless output is not available during a call or incoming call. If you receive a call during the wireless output, the wireless output stops.
- When Energy saving Wi-Fi is set to [ON] in Energy saving settings, you may not be able to connect the handset to the TV to connect to properly.  
In this case, set Energy saving Wi-Fi to [OFF].
- The handset may be subjected to radio interference and image distortion or jumpiness may occur depending on the conditions of the surroundings. Also, connection may fail or output may be terminated. Use this function in a condition with no obstructions or other wireless devices put between the TV and the handset.

## Cooperating with Blu-ray Disc recorder

If you connect the handset and a Blu-ray Disc recorder compatible with the home network function to the Wi-Fi network, you can watch/play TV programs received/recorded with the Blu-ray Disc recorder on the handset.

Also, If you connect a home network function compatible TV to the Wi-Fi network, you can display/play videos, still pictures, music, etc. the handset stores on the TV or display information on incoming calls and new mails the handset has received on the TV.

- This app uses DiXiM SDK.

The license of "DiXiM" is provided by DigiOn, Inc.

For details, refer to the website of DigiOn, Inc.

<http://www.digion.com/>

## 1 In the home screen, [SH tool] ▶

[Recommendation] ▶ [AV Device Link]

## 2 Select an item

- **Watch programs recorded in recorder.:** Play programs recorded with Blu-ray Disc recorders on the handset or transfer the programs to the handset.
- **Watch programs dubbed to device.:** Play programs transferred from Blu-ray Disc recorders to the handset.
- **Use other functions:** Display/Play videos, still pictures, music, etc. the handset stores on a TV, watch programs received with Blu-ray Disc recorders on the handset or display information on incoming calls and new mails on a TV.

- When Energy saving Wi-Fi is set to [ON] in Energy saving settings, you may not be able to connect the other party's device properly.  
In this case, set Energy saving Wi-Fi to [OFF].
- You cannot transfer data to a microSD Card.
- If you transfer programs, the number of videos which can be saved on the handset decreases.

## VPN (Virtual Private Network)

### Adding VPN

VPN (Virtual Private Network) is a connection method to prepare and connect safely to a virtual dedicated line on the network at home or in the office from outside the home, office, etc.

- Acquire information about the security from network administrators to set VPN connection from the handset.
- PPTP is not available when ISP is set to sp-mode.
- Set Screen lock to Pattern, Lock No. or Password in advance (P. 63 "Lock & security").

1 In the home screen, [ ] ▶ [Settings] ▶  
[More...] ▶ [VPN settings] ▶ [ ]

2 Set each item ▶ [Save]

### Connecting VPN

1 In the home screen, [ ] ▶ [Settings] ▶  
[More...] ▶ [VPN settings]

2 Select the VPN to connect to

3 Enter connecting information of the VPN ▶  
[Connect]

### Disconnecting VPN

1 Drag the status bar down ▶ touch the  
notification indicating that VPN has been  
enabled

2 [Disconnect]

# International Roaming

## Outline of international roaming (WORLD WING)

International roaming (WORLD WING) is a service that enables you to use the same phone number and mail address of the handset as you use in Japan in the service area of DOCOMO affiliated overseas network operators without changing your phone number and mail address. You can use calls and SMS without any changes in settings.

### Available network

The handset is rated as Class 4. You can use it in the 3G network and GSM/GPRS network service areas. In addition, this service is available in countries and regions supporting 3G 850 MHz/GSM 850 MHz. Check the available area.

- As for areas out of Xi area such as overseas, connect to 3G or GSM/GPRS network.

### Refer to the following before using the handset overseas.

- "Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]"
- DOCOMO International Services website

- For country codes, international call access number, universal number international prefix and information on countries and regions where connections are available and available network operators, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]" or the DOCOMO International Services website.

## Available services overseas

| Main communication service | 3G | 3G850 | GSM (GPRS) |
|----------------------------|----|-------|------------|
| Call                       | ○  | ○     | ○          |
| SMS                        | ○  | ○     | ○          |
| Mail*                      | ○  | ○     | ○          |
| Browser*                   | ○  | ○     | ○          |

\* Enable [Data roaming] to use data communication when roaming (P. 78 "Data roaming").

- Some services may not be available depending on the network operator or network.

## Before use overseas

### Check before departure

Check followings in Japan before using the handset overseas.

#### Subscription

- Check the status of a subscription for WORLD WING. For details, contact the number listed in "General Inquiries" on the last page.

#### Charging battery

- Use AC Adapter 03/04 (sold separately) as an AC adapter for charging while traveling overseas.

#### Charge

- Overseas charges (call charges, packet communication charges) differ from those in Japan.
- Since some apps automatically perform packet communication, the packet communication charges may be higher. Contact the app provider for the operation of each app.

### Set before departure

#### Network service settings

If you subscribed to network services, network services such as Voice Mail Service, Call Forwarding Service and Caller ID Display Request Service are available from overseas. However, some network services are not available.

- To use network services overseas, setting Remote operation settings to "Activate" is required. Remote operation settings can be set in your country of stay.
- Some network services that can be set/disabled etc. may not be available depending on overseas network operators.

### Check in your country of stay

The handset automatically connects to the available network operator when you turn the power on in your country of stay.

#### Connection

When Network operators (P. 78 "Network operators") is set to [Choose automatically], the suitable network is automatically selected.

Overseas packet communication is available with a fixed amount of charges as an upper limit per day by connecting to a network operator in a country or region where the flat-rate service is available. To use this service, subscription to flat-rate packet communication services in Japan is required. For details, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]" or the DOCOMO International Services website.

#### Viewing the display

- [Signal strength icon] is displayed during international roaming.
- 3G/GSM/HSPA is available.
- Connected network operator can be checked in the status panel.

#### Date & time

If [Automatic date & time] and [Auto timezone] of Date & time are enabled, the handset receives information on time and time differences from overseas network operator, then time and time differences are corrected.

- Time and time differences may not be adjusted correctly depending on the network of an overseas network operator. In this case, set time zone manually.
- The correction timing may differ depending on the network operator.
- For details on Date & time P. 66 "Date & time"

#### Inquiries

- When the handset or the docomo mini UIM card is lost or stolen overseas, promptly contact DOCOMO and conduct a procedure for canceling the use of service from your country of stay. Refer to the last page for inquiries. Note that communication/call charges after the handset or the docomo mini UIM card is lost or stolen are incurred to the subscriber.
- As for land-line phone etc., "International call access number" of your country of stay or "Universal number international prefix" is required.

### Check after homecoming

The handset automatically connects to the DOCOMO network after returning to Japan. If it fails, make the following settings.

- Set Network Mode to [LTE/3G/GSM(Auto)] (P. 78 "Network mode").
- Set Network operators to [Choose automatically] (P. 78 "Network operators").

## Settings for use overseas

At the time of purchase, the handset is set to automatically search for and switch to available networks. When you want to manually switch networks, set by performing following operations.

- 1 In the home screen, [⌘] ▶ [Settings] ▶ [More...] ▶ [Mobile networks]
- 2 Select an item
  - **Data enabled**: Set whether to use data communication.
  - **Data roaming**: For details ⓘ P. 78 "Data roaming"
  - **Access Point Names**: Set an access point.
  - **Network Mode**: For details ⓘ P. 78 "Network mode"
  - **Network operators**: For details ⓘ P. 78 "Network operators"

### Data roaming

Set whether to use data communication when roaming.

- 1 In the home screen, [⌘] ▶ [Settings] ▶ [More...] ▶ [Mobile networks] ▶ [Data roaming]
  - When the confirmation screen is displayed, check the content and select [OK].

### Network mode

Set a network to use.

- 1 In the home screen, [⌘] ▶ [Settings] ▶ [More...] ▶ [Mobile networks] ▶ [Network Mode]
- 2 Select an item
  - **LTE/3G/GSM(Auto)**: Automatically switch to an available network.
  - **LTE/3G**: Use 3G network.
  - **GSM**: Use GSM/GPRS network.

### Network operators

Search for networks and set a network operator to use.

- 1 In the home screen, [⌘] ▶ [Settings] ▶ [More...] ▶ [Mobile networks] ▶ [Network operators]
  - If the confirmation screen for data communication is displayed, check the content and select [OK].
  - Search for networks and a list of network operators is displayed.
  - When an error occurs during the network search, disable [Data enabled] (ⓘ P. 78 "Settings for use overseas") and try again.
- 2 Select a network operator
  - To search for network operators again: [Search networks]
  - To automatically select a network operator: [Choose automatically]

- If you manually set network operators overseas, set to [Choose automatically] after returning to Japan.

## Making/Receiving a call in your country of stay

### Making a call outside your country of stay (including Japan)

- 1 In the home screen, [☎] ▶ [Dial]
- 2 "+" (touch and hold "0") ▶ enter country code, area code (city code) and the other party's phone number ▶ [☎]
  - When the area code (city code) begins with "0", omit the first "0" when dialing (Include the "0" when making a call to some countries or regions such as Italy).
  - Alternatively, enter a phone number ▶ [≡] ▶ [International call] ▶ select a country code to enter a country code.
    - The first "0" of the area code (city code) will be omitted.

- Even if you notify the caller ID, [Unknown], [Private number], etc. may appear depending on the network operator, and the caller ID may not be displayed correctly.

### Making a call using International Dial Assist

When you make a call to other countries from your country of stay, you can make an international call with simple operation using International Dial Assist.

- Set International dial assist in advance.
  - The first "0" of a phone number will be automatically converted to the country code you set in Country code.
- 1 In the home screen, [☎] ▶ [Dial]
  - 2 Enter a phone number ▶ [☎]
  - 3 [Converted number]

#### ■ Setting of International Dial Assist

- 1 In the home screen, [⌘] ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Call] ▶ [Roaming settings] ▶ [International dial assist]
- 2 Select an item
  - **Automatic conversion function**: Set whether to make calls using International Dial Assist.
  - **Country code**: Set country code to use when using International Dial Assist.
  - **International prefix**: Set international prefix to use when using International Dial Assist.

### Making a call in your country of stay

You can make a domestic call in your country of stay in the same way as you do in Japan.

- Always enter the area code (city code), even when the number is in the same area.

### Making a call to a WORLD WING subscriber overseas

When you make a call to a WORLD WING subscriber overseas, the call is made as an international call to Japan regardless of your country of stay.

- 1 In the home screen, [☎] ▶ [Dial]
- 2 "+" (touch and hold "0") ▶ enter country code "81" (Japan), the other party's mobile phone number excluding the first "0" ▶ [☎]

## Receiving a call overseas

You can receive a call overseas in the same way as you do in Japan.

- When a call is received during international roaming, the call is forwarded from Japan. Call charges to Japan are incurred by the caller and receiving charges by the receiver.

### ■ Having calls to your handset

When having calls made to your handset from Japan, have your phone number entered just as a domestic call in Japan.

When having calls made to your handset from countries other than Japan, have the international call access number and country code “81” (Japan) added to the beginning of your phone number with the first “0” excluded as an international call to Japan regardless of your country of stay.

International call access number of the country of the caller-81-90 (or 80/70)-XXXX-XXXX

## Setting international roaming

### Roaming settings

Set international roaming.

**1** In the home screen, [ ] ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Call] ▶ [Roaming settings]

**2** Select an item

- **Restricting incoming calls:** Set whether to reject incoming calls during international roaming.
- **Incoming notification while roaming:** Set whether to notify you of incoming call information (date and time of calls or caller ID) by SMS, when you are in a place with no signal, the handset is turned off or you fail to answer an incoming call during international roaming.
- **Roaming guidance:** Set whether to play the guidance notifying the other party who makes a call to you during international roaming that you are using international roaming.
- **International dial assist:** Make settings for International dial assist. For details ☎ P. 78 “Setting of International Dial Assist”
- **Network service:** Make settings for using network services available during international roaming. For details ☎ P. 79 “Network services during roaming”

### Network services during roaming

You can use network services such as Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service overseas.

**1** In the home screen, [ ] ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Call] ▶ [Roaming settings] ▶ [Network service]

**2** Select an item

- **Remote operation(charged):** Make settings for remote operations.
- **Caller ID notification request service(charged):** Make settings for Caller ID Display Request Service.
- **Roaming call notification(charged):** Make settings for Incoming notification while roaming.
- **Roaming guidance(charged):** Make settings for Roaming guidance.
- **Voice mail(charged):** Make settings for Voice Mail Service.
- **Call forwarding(charged):** Make settings for Call Forwarding Service.

## Introduction of options and related devices

Combine the handset with various optional accessories (sold separately) for expanded personal and business use. Some products may not be available in certain areas. Contact a sales outlet such as a docomo Shop for details. Refer to the user's guide of each product for more details on optional parts.

- Back Cover SH71
- Micro USB Cable 01
- 1Seg Antenna Cable SH01
- Wireless Earphone Set 03
- Carry Case 02
- Bone conduction microphone/receiver 02
- Pocket charger 01/02
- AC Adapter 03\*1/04\*1
- DC Adapter 03\*1
- AC Adapter Converter Plug TypeC 01
- DriveNetCradle 01
- L-03E\*2
- SmartTV dstick 01

\*1 Refer to P. 14 "Charging with AC adapter/DC adapter" for details on charging with an AC adapter/a DC adapter (sold separately).

\*2 A charging function to charge the handset is supported.

## Troubleshooting (FAQ)

### Troubleshooting

- First, check whether the software update is required. If it is required, update the software (☞ P. 83 "Updating software").
- If there is no improvement on the problems even after checking the following items, feel free to contact the number listed in "Repairs" (in Japanese only) on the last page or a repair counter that DOCOMO specifies.

#### Power

- The handset is not turned on
  - Make sure the battery has not run out. ☞ P. 14 "Charging"
- The screen does not respond or the handset cannot be turned off
  - You can turn the power off forcibly by pressing  for at least 8 seconds. ☞ P. 15 "Turning power off forcibly"
  - Note that data, contents you have set, etc. may be deleted since the power is turned off forcibly.

#### Charging

- Cannot charge the battery
  - The charging illumination does not illuminate or it flashes
    - Is the power plug or the cigarette lighter plug of the adapter inserted into the outlet or cigarette lighter socket properly? ☞ P. 14 "Charging with AC adapter/DC adapter"
  - Are the adapter and the handset set properly? ☞ P. 14 "Charging with AC adapter/DC adapter"
  - When using an AC adapter (sold separately), are the AC adapter and the handset securely connected? ☞ P. 14 "Charging with AC adapter/DC adapter"
  - If a call, communication or another function is performed for a long time while charging, the handset may become warm and charging may stop. Charge again after the handset temperature lowers. ☞ P. 14 "Cautions while charging"

- Is an adapter specified by NTT DOCOMO being used for charging? Contact the number listed in "Repairs" (in Japanese only) on the last page or a repair counter that DOCOMO specifies if you cannot charge the battery even when using a specified one.

#### Terminal operation

- Apps do not work properly (e.g. inability to activate them, frequent errors)
  - Make sure there is no disabled app. Try again after enabling a disabled app, if any. ☞ P. 62 "Enabling an app"
- Becomes hot while operating/charging
  - The handset, internal battery or adapter may become warm while operating or charging, when watching 1Seg etc. for a long time while charging, etc. There is no operational problem. ☞ P. 14 "Cautions while charging"
- Battery life is short
  - Make sure the handset is not left for a long time outside the service area. Outside the service area, since radio waves are searched to make communication available, more electric power than usual is used.
  - The battery life depends on the usage environment and deterioration level. ☞ P. 86 "Main specifications"
  - Internal battery is a consumable product. Battery life per charge is gradually reduced every time the battery is charged. Contact the number listed in "Repairs" (in Japanese only) on the last page or a repair counter that DOCOMO specifies if the battery life becomes extremely shorter than at the time of purchase even after fully charged. ☞ P. 14 "Internal battery usable life"
- Not activated by touching or pressing keys
  - Make sure the handset is not turned off. ☞ P. 15 "Turning power on"
- Screen response is slow when touching or pressing keys
  - This may happen when a great deal of data is saved on the handset, when a large amount of data is being transferred between the handset and the microSD Card, etc. ☞ P. 60 "Storage"
- docomo mini UIM card is not recognized
  - Is the docomo mini UIM card inserted facing right direction? ☞ P. 13 "docomo mini UIM card"
- Clock is incorrect
  - Clock may become incorrect if the power is turned on for a long time. Make sure [Automatic date & time] is enabled and turn the power on again in a location with good signal conditions. ☞ P. 66 "Date & time"
- Terminal operation is unstable
  - The apps installed on the handset after purchase may become a cause. If you can improve the symptoms by activating the handset with the safe mode set, you may be able to improve the symptoms by uninstalling the installed apps.
    - ※ The safe mode is a function to activate the handset nearly in the state of default.
  - For activating the safe mode
    - Turn the power on again when the power is turned off, then keep pressing  on the screen during activation until the home screen is displayed.
    - ※ Alternatively,  while the power is turned on (for at least 1 second) ► touch and hold [To sleep]/[Power off completely] ► [OK] to activate the safe mode.
    - ※ When the safe mode is activated, [セーフモード]/[Safe mode] is displayed at the bottom left of the screen.
    - ※ To deactivate the safe mode, turn the power on again.
  - Back up the necessary information in advance before using the safe mode.

- Widgets created by yourself may disappear.
- The safe mode is not an ordinary activating state and thus deactivate the safe mode if you want to use in an ordinary way.

## ■ Calling

- Calls cannot be made by touching or pressing keys
  - Make sure [Restrict calls] in Application lock is not set. P. 64 “Application lock”
  - Make sure Airplane mode is not set. P. 62 “More”
- Ringtone does not sound
  - Make sure phone ringtone volume is not set to “0”. P. 59 “Sound”
  - Make sure Public mode (power OFF), the manner mode or Airplane mode is not activated. P. 34 “Network service”, P. 59 “Mode settings”, P. 62 “More”
  - Make sure call rejection is not set. P. 34 “Reject call setting”
  - Make sure ringing time for Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service is not set to “0 seconds”. P. 34 “Network service”
- Calls cannot be made ([]) does not disappear even after moving to another place or calls cannot be made/received even though signal status is not bad
  - Turn the power on again or attach the docomo mini UIM card again. P. 13 “docomo mini UIM card”, P. 15 “Turning power on/off”
  - Depending on the signal type, even though status is “inside the service area” or “[]” (indicating signal status) appears”, making/receiving a call may not be available. Move to another place and call again.
  - Make sure the call restriction such as call rejection is not set. P. 34 “Reject call setting”
  - In a crowded place, heavy telephone/mail traffic may make it difficult to get a connection. In this case, a busy tone is played. Move to another place or call again later.

## ■ Screen

- Display is dark
  - Make sure Screen timeout is not set to a short duration. P. 60 “Display”
  - Make sure the setting of Brightness is not changed. P. 60 “Brightness”
  - Make sure [Automatic brightness] of Brightness is not enabled. The brightness of the screen may vary depending on the surrounding light if the setting is enabled. P. 60 “Brightness”
  - Make sure [VeilView] is not enabled. P. 60 “VeilView”

## ■ Sound

- The other party's voice is not heard well or is too loud during a call
  - Make sure you did not change the in-call volume. P. 32 “Adjusting the in-call volume”

## ■ Mail

- Mail is not automatically received
  - Make sure Inbox check frequency in the account settings of Email is not set to [Never].

## ■ Camera

- Still picture or video shot by the camera is blurred
  - Switch Focus settings of various settings to [Macro] when shooting a nearby subject. P. 48 “Shooting screen layout”
  - Make sure the camera lens is neither misted up nor exposed to dirt. P. 47 “Before using camera”

## ■ 1Seg

- Cannot watch 1Seg
  - Make sure the handset is not outside the area of a terrestrial digital TV broadcasting service or in a place with weak signal. P. 45 “Broadcast wave”
  - Make sure a channel list is created. P. 45 “Creating channel lists”

## ■ Osaifu-Keitai

- Cannot use Osaifu-Keitai
  - If Omakase Lock is activated, Osaifu-Keitai functions are not available regardless of the settings of NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock.
  - Make sure NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock is not set. P. 44 “NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock”
  - Is the mark of the handset held over the scanning device? P. 44 “Precautions about holding over the other device”

## ■ International roaming

- Cannot use the handset overseas (The signal icon appears)
  - Make sure you have subscribed to “International roaming service (WORLD WING)”. Check the status of a subscription for “International roaming service (WORLD WING)”. P. 77 “Outline of international roaming (WORLD WING)”
- Cannot use the handset overseas ([]) appears
  - Make sure the handset is not outside the service area or in a place with weak signal. Refer to “Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]” or the DOCOMO International Services website to check if the service area or network operator is available. P. 77 “Outline of international roaming (WORLD WING)”
  - Change the network setting or network operator setting. Set Network Mode to [LTE/3G/GSM(Auto)]. Set Network operators to [Choose automatically]. P. 78 “Network mode”, P. 78 “Network operators”
  - Turn the power on again. The handset may recover. P. 15 “Turning power on/off”
- Cannot use data communication overseas
  - Enable [Data roaming]. P. 78 “Data roaming”
- Suddenly the handset becomes unavailable during overseas use
  - Make sure the approximate limit of usage fee is not exceeded. As for “International roaming service (WORLD WING)”, the approximate limit of usage fee is set in advance. Pay off the usage fee to resume services if usage fee exceeds the limit.
- The other party's phone number is not notified/A different phone number from that of the other party is notified/Functions to use details saved in the phonebook or Caller ID notification are not activated
  - The caller ID is not displayed on the handset even though the other party makes a call with notifying the caller ID if the used network or network operator does not notify. In addition, a different phone number from that of the other party may be notified depending on the used network or network operator.

## ■ Data management

- Data is not transferred
  - Make sure a USB HUB is not used. If used, the operation may not work correctly. P. 74 “Connecting the handset and PC”
- Data saved on the microSD Card is not displayed
  - Remove the microSD Card and insert it again. P. 68 “microSD Card (external storage)”
- Images are not displayed correctly
  - An entire image goes black when the image data is damaged.

## ■ Bluetooth function

- Cannot connect with Bluetooth connection compatible device/  
Cannot find it even if searching
  - Set the Bluetooth connection compatible device (sold commercially) side to stand-by and register it from the handset side. To delete the registered device once and register it again, both the Bluetooth connection compatible device (sold commercially) and the handset are required to delete the registered devices. ☎ P. 71 “Using Bluetooth function”
- Calls cannot be made from the handset with the external device such as car navigation system or hands-free device connected
  - Call may not connect to the number if making multiple calls in the condition that the other party does not answer or outside the service area. In this case, turn off the handset power and restart. ☎ P. 15 “Turning power on/off”

## ■ Map/GPS function

- Cannot set AUTO-GPS service information
  - Make sure AUTO-GPS has not been suspended due to insufficient battery level. If AUTO-GPS has been suspended due to Low-power operation settings, you cannot set AUTO-GPS service information. In this case, set Low-power operation settings to [Not suspend] or charge the battery to set the service. ☎ P. 14 “Charging”, P. 63 “docomo service/cloud”
  - Make sure [AUTO-GPS operation settings] is not disabled. ☎ P. 63 “docomo service/cloud”

## Error messages

- [Cannot connect]
  - The connection could not be made to data broadcasting for an unspecified reason. Try again later.
- [Connection error; failed to send]  
[Connection has been interrupted due to no answer]  
[Server error; failed to send]  
[The destination server is not supporting it.]  
[Transmission error; try again in a while]
  - Appears when attempting to use mail or SMS with the line system not in service or extremely congested. Try again later.
- [Enter passcode.]
  - Appears when an operation for the restricted function was attempted while the handset lock is set. Enter the passcode to temporarily disable handset lock and continue operation.
  - Appears when attempting to use a function that requires the passcode to be entered.
- [Failed to get license. Cannot play.]
  - Appears when failed to update a license of copyrighted contents that has reached the expiration date.
- [Failed to send]
  - Appears when SMS was not sent properly.
  - Appears when mail was not sent properly. Try again from a location with a strong signal.
- [Insert/recheck SIM card.]
  - Make sure docomo mini UIM card is properly inserted. ☎ P. 13 “docomo mini UIM card”
- [Low on space]
  - Available space on the handset memory is decreasing. Some functions or apps may not work properly. Uninstall unneeded apps or move/delete files.
- [Mobile network not available.]
  - Make sure a valid network mode is set. ☎ P. 78 “Network mode”
- [No permissions to play this content.]
  - Appears when there is no available license or when attempting to play copyrighted contents whose playable period or limit has expired.

- [Please wait for a while(data)]
  - Packet communication network is extremely congested. Try again later.
- [Please wait for a while(voice call)]
  - Audio line network is extremely congested. Try again later.
- [Utilizing the production number information. Continue?]
  - May appear while watching 1Seg. Select [Yes] to send manufacture number of the handset and docomo mini UIM card.
- [xx mails have been received, but some have not been received.]
  - Appears when not all mails can be received for an unspecified reason.

## Smartphone Anshin Remote Support

※ This service is provided in Japanese.

**By having the screen on your handset shared with DOCOMO, you can get supports for operating and setting the handset.**

- In the following cases, Smartphone Anshin Remote Support is not available.
  - When the docomo mini UIM card is not inserted
  - During international roaming
  - In Airplane mode
- Smartphone Anshin Remote Support is a paid service that requires subscription.
- Some operations and settings are not covered.
- For details on Smartphone Anshin Remote Support, refer to the DOCOMO website.

### 1 Make a call to Smartphone remote support center

Smartphone remote support center

☎ 0120-783-360

Business hours: 9:00 a.m. to 8:00 p.m. (open all year round)

- In the home screen, [☰] ▶ [遠隔サポート] (Remote support) ▶ [このスマートフォンから発信する] (Make a call from this smartphone) ▶ [☎] to make a call to Smartphone remote support center from the handset.

### 2 In the home screen, [☰] ▶ [遠隔サポート] (Remote support)

- When you use this for the first time, you must agree to “ソフトウェア使用許諾書” (Software license agreement).

### 3 [遠隔サポートの接続画面に進む] (Proceed to the connection screen for Remote support) ▶ [同意する] (Agree)

### 4 Enter the connection number provided by DOCOMO

### 5 The remote support starts after the connection is established

# Warranty and After-Sales Service

## Warranty

- Make sure that the warranty card is included with your handset at the time of purchase. Check that the name of the retailer, the date of purchase, and the necessary details have been filled in on the warranty card. Be sure to keep it in a safe place. Contact the retailer if any necessary details on the warranty card are not completed.  
The warranty period without charge is 1 year from the date of purchase.
- For the purpose of improvement, the specifications for this product and its accessories are subject to complete or partial change without prior notice.
- Information registered in your handset, such as phonebooks, may be lost or changed if your handset is damaged, repaired or mishandled. It is recommended that backup be kept of information such as phonebooks.
- ※ The handset allows you to save phonebook data etc. to the microSD Card.
- ※ The handset allows you to back up data such as phonebooks to the Data Center by using Data Security Service.

## After-Sales Services

### ■ If you have problems with your handset

Refer to “Troubleshooting” on this manual before requesting repairs.

Contact the number listed in “Repairs” (in Japanese only) on the last page if problems persist.

### ■ If your handset needs repairs after contacting DOCOMO

Bring your handset to a repair counter that DOCOMO specifies. However, repair counters are only open during business hours. Make sure to bring your warranty card with you. Note that it may take several days to repair depending on the damaged condition.

#### During the warranty period

- The handset will be repaired without charge in accordance with the terms of the warranty.
- When bringing the handset in for repairs, be sure to bring the warranty card. Even during the warranty period, a fee will be charged for repairs of malfunctions or damage caused by your improper handling (damage of liquid crystal and connector) or if no warranty certificate is presented.
- Repairs for damages caused by the use of devices and consumable products other than those specified by DOCOMO will also incur a fee, even during the warranty period.

#### Repairs may not be possible in the following circumstances.

- As a result of inspection, when damage from water exposure, condensation, sweat or other liquids is found or when the internal circuit board is damaged or deformed (Repairs may not be possible when external connector terminal, earphone/microphone terminal, LCD, etc. is damaged or when a housing is cracked)
- ※ Even when repairs are possible, repair charges will be incurred because the warranty does not cover such damage.

#### After the warranty period has expired

Charged repairs will be carried out upon request.

## Replacement parts

Replacement parts (required to maintain the functionality of the handset) will be kept in stock basically for 4 years following the halt of production. However, note that there may be a case when repair is not possible for the shortage of replacement parts depending on the faulty part. Repairs may be possible even after this period has passed, depending on the faulty part. Contact the number listed in “Repairs” (in Japanese only) on the last page for details.

### ■ IMPORTANT!

- Never attempt to modify the handset or its accessories.
  - May cause fire, bodily injury or malfunction.
  - If your handset has been modified previously, it will only be accepted for the repair as long as you agree that we restore the handset to its original state. However, repairs may be refused depending on the extent of the modification.  
The following cases may be considered as a modification.
    - Stickers are applied to the LCD or keys
    - Decorations are made to the handset with adhesive agent
    - Exterior parts are replaced with those which are not standard DOCOMO products
  - Repairs for any malfunction or damage caused by such modifications will incur fees, even during the warranty period.
- Information stored in your handset, such as the settings of various functions, may be cleared or reset if your handset is damaged, repaired or mishandled. If this occurs, please re-enter the information or re-specify the settings.
- When the handset is repaired, MAC address for Wi-Fi and Bluetooth address may be changed regardless of the faulty part.
- The following sections of the handset contain parts that generate magnetic waves. Keep cash cards and other objects likely to be affected by magnetic waves away from the handset. Cards may become unusable.
  - Sections: Speaker, earpiece
- If the inside of the handset gets wet or becomes moist, immediately turn off the power though SH-02F provides waterproof performance. Then, visit a repair counter. The handset may not be repaired depending on its condition.

### ■ Memory dial (Phonebook) and downloaded information

- Created, imported or downloaded data may be modified or deleted when changing models or repairing the handset. DOCOMO shall not be liable for any modification or deletion of content. DOCOMO may, at our convenience, exchange your handset for a substitute in lieu of repairs. However, in this case, we cannot transfer these data to replaced products except for some data.

## Updating software

**Connect SH-02F to the network and check for software update. If necessary, download update files and update.**

- Check the DOCOMO website for updates.
- The following three kinds of update methods are available.
  - Auto-update : Automatically download new update files and rewrite at the set time.
  - Now update : Immediately update.
  - Reserve update : Automatically update at the set time.

- You can update software even if the handset contains phonebook, camera image, mail, downloaded data, etc. However, DOCOMO may not be able to protect data that could be lost due to malfunction, damage, water exposure and so on. It is recommended that important data be backed up before software update. Note that some data, such as downloaded data, cannot be backed up.

## Using software update

- Fully recharge battery before updating software. It is recommended to connect a charger cable to the handset when updating.
- Software cannot be updated in the following cases.
  - During a call
  - When [⌵] is displayed\*
  - During international roaming\*
  - In Airplane mode\*
  - During Wi-Fi tethering
  - During USB tethering
  - During Android version upgrade
  - When date and time are set incorrectly
  - When battery level is insufficient for software update
- \* When the handset is outside the service area or during international roaming, the update is not available even if Wi-Fi is connected.
- Updating (downloading and rewriting) software may take time.
- Making or receiving calls, each communication function and other functions cannot be used while updating software. However, receiving calls is possible during download.
- It is recommended to update software at a location with good signal conditions while you are not moving. Software update may be interrupted if signal is weak.
- If software has already been updated, [No update is needed.] appears when software update is checked.
- [When docomo network is not available, or during roaming, software update is not available even if Wi-Fi is connected.] appears during international roaming or outside the service area. The same applies while Wi-Fi connection is set.
- While updating software, received SMS is held at SMS center.
- When updating software, the information unique to SH-02F (model, serial number, etc.) is automatically sent to the DOCOMO software update server. Sent information is only used for software update.
- If software update fails, the handset may not be activated, or [Software Update failed.] may appear and no operations may be available. In this case, bring the handset to a repair counter that DOCOMO specifies.
- When PIN code is set, the PIN code entry screen appears during restart after rewriting and you are required to enter PIN code.
- While updating software, do not activate other apps.

## Auto-update of software

You can automatically download new update files and rewrite the software at the set time.

### ■ Auto-update setting of software

- The automatic update setting is set to [Automatic Update] by default.

1 In the home screen, [⌵] ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Device info] ▶ [Software update] ▶ [Configure the software update]

2 [Automatic Update]/[Manual Update]

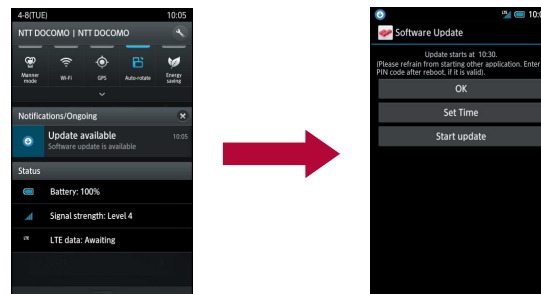
### ■ When software update is required

When an update file is automatically downloaded, [⌵] (Software update is available) appears in the status bar.

- If the time for the rewrite arrives with [⌵] (Software update is available) displayed, the software is automatically rewritten and [⌵] (Software update is available) disappears.

1 Drag the status bar down ▶ select the notification

- The rewrite notice screen is displayed and you can confirm the time for the rewrite.



2 Select the rewrite method

- **OK:** The update starts when the set time arrives.
- **Set Time:** For details P. 85 "Reserve update of software"
- **Start update:** For details P. 84 "Now update of software"

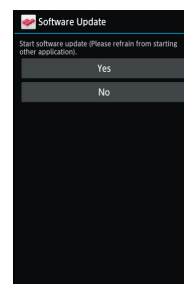
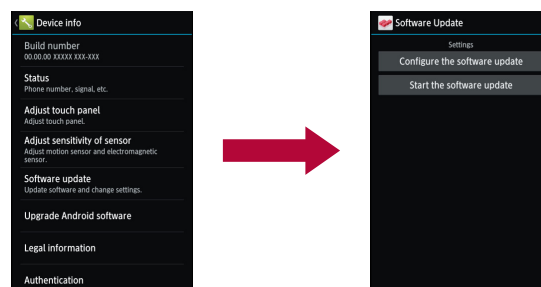
- If software cannot be updated when update notification is received, [⌵] (Software update is available) appears in the status bar.
- If software cannot be rewritten at the time for the rewrite, software is rewritten at the same time of the following day.
- Software cannot be automatically updated when the automatic update setting is set to [Manual Update] or while updating software by Now update.

## Now update of software

You can update software immediately.

- You can update software from the rewrite notice screen or the menu.

1 In the home screen, [⌵] ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Device info] ▶ [Software update] ▶ [Start the software update] ▶ [Yes]



- To update software from the rewrite notice screen: Display the rewrite notice screen ► [Start update]

## 2 Approximately 10 seconds after [Ready for update.] appears, the rewrite automatically starts

- Touch [OK] to start the rewrite immediately.
- During update, no key operations are available. It is not possible to cancel update.
- When the update is complete, the handset restarts and the home screen is displayed.

- When software update is not necessary, [No update is needed.] appears.

### ■ Post-update display

When the software update is complete, the notification appears in the status bar. Open the status panel and touch the notification to display the completion screen.

## Reserve update of software

You can change a time for software rewrite if you want to set a different time for installing update files.

### 1 Display the rewrite notice screen ► [Set Time]

### 2 Enter the time ► [OK]

### ■ When reserved time arrives

Approximately 10 seconds after the rewrite screen appears at the start time, the software rewrite automatically starts.



- During update, no key operations are available. It is not possible to cancel update.
- If software cannot be updated at the start time, software is updated at the same time of the following day.
- During Android version upgrade, software is not updated even if the reserved time arrives.
- Software is updated even if the alarm or another function is activated at the same time when the reserved time arrives.
- When SH-02F is turned off at the start time, software is updated at the same time as reserved time after turning on the power.
- If [Software update was suspended Please check the status of the handset and retry.] appears in the status panel during the software update, make sure the handset is not in any of the following states and update the software again.
  - When [Signal icon] is displayed
  - During Wi-Fi tethering
  - During USB tethering
  - When another function is running

## Upgrading Android version

### Android version upgrade

**Connect the handset to the network and check for Android version upgrade. If necessary, download upgrade files and upgrade.**

- If the Android version upgrade is necessary, you will be notified by a notification icon (Upgrade Android software) on the status bar or you can visit the DOCOMO website to check the availability of version upgrades.
- The following changes are made on the handset if the Android version is upgraded.
  - Improvement and addition of functions
  - Improvement of operations
  - Improvement of the product quality
  - Update of security patch
- Be sure to keep the Android version up-to-date to use the handset safely and comfortably.

- You can upgrade the Android version even if the handset contains data in it. However, DOCOMO may not be able to protect data that could be lost due to malfunction, damage, water exposure and so on. It is recommended that important data be backed up before version upgrade. Note that some data cannot be backed up.

### Using Android version upgrade

- Once the version upgrade is completed, you cannot downgrade the Android version to the previous one.
- Fully recharge the battery before upgrading the Android version.
- The docomo mini UIM card is required to upgrade the Android version. If you want to use packet communication to upgrade the Android version, subscription to sp-mode is required.
- End all apps before upgrading the Android version. If another app is activated during the version upgrade, the Android version upgrade may be interrupted. Do not turn the power off during the version upgrade.
- No functions including making/receiving calls are available on the handset during the version upgrade.
- Android version cannot be upgraded in the following cases.
  - During a call
  - When [Signal icon] is displayed
  - During international roaming
  - In Airplane mode
  - During Wi-Fi tethering
  - During USB tethering
  - When date and time are set incorrectly
  - When the battery level is insufficient for Android version upgrade
  - When available space on the handset memory is insufficient
  - During software update
- Upgrading version may take time.
- [Unable to start upgrading in an area where docomo signal is unreachable or during roaming even when Wi-Fi connection is enabled.] appears during international roaming or outside the service area.
- When version upgrade is completed, some settings are reset. Re-enter the information or re-specify the settings.
- When upgrading version, the information unique to the handset (model, serial number, etc.) is automatically sent to the DOCOMO version upgrade server. Sent information is only used for Android version upgrade.
- When PIN code is set, the PIN code entry screen appears during restart after rewriting and you are required to enter PIN code.

- If version upgrade fails and all operations become unavailable, bring the handset to a repair counter that DOCOMO specifies.

## Downloading upgrade files

**1** In the home screen, [⌘] ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Device info] ▶ [Upgrade Android software]

**2** [Start upgrading]

**3** Select an item

- **Download now (only via Wi-Fi):** Download upgrade files immediately via Wi-Fi connection.
- **Download later (via Wi-Fi or Xi):** Download upgrade files at the automatically set time via Wi-Fi connection or packet communication.
- **Download later (only via Wi-Fi)\*:** Download upgrade files at the reserved time via Wi-Fi connection.
- **Do not upgrade:** End Android version upgrade without carrying out version upgrade.

\* Appears when you cannot download upgrade files via packet communication.

- [No upgrade is needed.] appears if the handset software is the latest.
- If the download is interrupted, data downloaded up to that point is retained. Use the notification icon (Download stopped) on the status bar to restart the download.
- If you select [Download later (via Wi-Fi or Xi)] or [Download later (only via Wi-Fi)], the time for the download to start is automatically set. The time cannot be changed. If you do not want to download at the automatically set time, [Upgrade Android software] ▶ [Cancel]. Then select [Download now (only via Wi-Fi)] and download upgrade files.

## Installing upgrade files

If upgrade files are downloaded, you can install them to the handset.

- **Install now:** Install the upgrade files immediately.
- **Install later:** Install the upgrade files at the reserved time.

- The handset restarts after the installation is completed.
- If you select [Install later], the time for the installation to start is automatically set. If you want to change the time, in the home screen, [⌘] ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Device info] ▶ [Upgrade Android software] and change the time.

## After Android version upgrade

- After Android version upgrade, check that each app has been updated by means such as the following procedure. In the home screen, [Play Store] ▶ [⌘] ▶ [My apps]. If you do not update an app which needs to be updated, the app's operations may become unstable or functions may not work normally.
- For details on the OS version of an app, contact the provider of the app.

## Main specifications

### Package

|                                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Product name                     | SH-02F                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Size                             | Approx. 128 (H) × Approx. 63 (W) × Approx. 9.8 (D) mm (Approx. 9.9 mm at thickest point)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| Weight                           | Approx. 120 g                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Memory                           | ROM: 16 GB<br>RAM: 2 GB                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| Continuous talk time*1, 2, 3     | FOMA/3G<br>Approx. 710 min<br>GSM<br>Approx. 650 min                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Continuous stand-by time*2, 3, 4 | FOMA/3G<br>At rest: Approx. 570 hr (Network Mode: LTE/3G/GSM(Auto))*5<br>GSM<br>At rest: Approx. 450 hr (Network Mode: LTE/3G/GSM(Auto))*5<br>LTE<br>At rest: Approx. 460 hr (Network Mode: LTE/3G/GSM(Auto))*5                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| 1Seg watching time*3, 6          | Approx. 480 min                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Charge time                      | AC Adapter 03: Approx. 180 min<br>AC Adapter 04: Approx. 130 min<br>DC Adapter 03: Approx. 190 min                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Display                          | Type<br>TFT (IGZO)<br>16,777,216 colors<br>Size<br>Approx. 4.5 inches<br>Pixels<br>2,073,600 pixels (FullHD: horizontal 1,080 × vertical 1,920 pixels)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Earphone/Microphone terminal     | Diameter of plug: 3.5 mm stereo mini plug<br>Type of pole: Quadrapoles                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Image pickup device              | Type<br>Out-camera: Back-illuminated CMOS*7<br>In-camera: Back-illuminated CMOS*7<br>Size<br>Out-camera: 1/3.0 inches<br>In-camera: 1/8.2 inches                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Camera                           | Effective pixels<br>Out-camera: Approx. 13.1 million pixels<br>In-camera: Approx. 1.2 million pixels<br>Recorded pixels (Max.)<br>Out-camera: Approx. 12.8 million pixels<br>In-camera: Approx. 1.2 million pixels<br>Zoom (Digital)<br>Out-camera: Up to approx. 16.0× (Still picture)/Up to approx. 16.0× (Video)<br>In-camera: Up to approx. 16.0× (Still picture)/Up to approx. 16.0× (Video) |

|                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|-----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Recording       | Number of still pictures recorded<br>Approx. 71,500 shots (when saved on the handset)* <sup>8</sup><br>Approx. 6,500 shots (when saved on 1 GB microSD Card)* <sup>8</sup><br>Continuous shooting of still pictures<br>FullHD: 12 shots/HD: 18 shots/VGA: 50 shots<br>File format for still picture<br>JPEG<br>Recording time for video<br>Up to approx. 90 min each/Up to approx. 704 min in total (when saved on the handset)* <sup>9</sup><br>Up to approx. 64 min each/Up to approx. 64 min in total (when saved on 1 GB microSD Card)* <sup>9</sup><br>File format for video<br>MP4 |
| Music playback  | Continuous playback time* <sup>10</sup><br>WMA (Compatible with background playback): Approx. 3,400 min<br>MP3 (Compatible with background playback): Approx. 6,150 min                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Video playback  | Continuous playback time* <sup>11</sup><br>WMV: Approx. 840 min                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| Memory capacity | Approx. 11.0 GB* <sup>12</sup>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| Wireless LAN    | Meets IEEE 802.11a/b/g/n (2.4 GHz/5 GHz)/ac* <sup>13</sup>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Languages       | Displayed languages: Japanese and English<br>Input languages (for typing): Japanese and English<br>Input languages (for speaking): Depending on Google voice typing                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |

- \*1 Continuous talk time is an estimate of the time during which you can talk on a phone in a location where the signal is normal.
- \*2 Talk (Communication)/Stand-by time is shortened with the frequent use of each function such as data communications, Multiaccess, camera function, 1Seg function or Bluetooth function. Actual using time may change depending on the combination of talk (communication) and stand-by time. The longer the talk time is, the shorter the stand-by time becomes.
- \*3 Talk (Communication)/Stand-by time may be reduced by about half or 1Seg watching time may be shortened depending on conditions including the battery level status, functions used, temperature or other environmental conditions, and signal strength (no signal or weak signal).
- \*4 Continuous stand-by time is an estimate of the time when moving in a status where signals are received normally.
- \*5 This is the average usage time during which you are not moving and in a status where signals are received normally.
- \*6 1Seg watching time is an estimate of watching time in a status where signals are received normally.
- \*7 CMOS (Complementary metal-oxide semiconductor) is an image device equivalent to the film of silver salt cameras.
- \*8 Picture Size: VGA (640×480)/File size: Approx. 152 KB
- \*9 Picture Size: VGA (640×480)/File size limit: 2 GB/Type: Image + voice
- \*10 Playback app: Music/Sound effects: Natural
- \*11 Playback app: Video Player/Sound effects: Natural
- \*12 Depending on usage of apps which use common memory, the saving capacity of each data may be reduced.
- \*13 Meets Draft IEEE 802.11ac. Products conforming to an official standard which may be developed in the future or products of other companies which conform to the Draft version may not be able to communicate with the handset. For details on available products, refer to the respective companies' websites.

## Internal battery

|                  |             |
|------------------|-------------|
| Battery          | Lithium-ion |
| Nominal voltage  | 4.8V DC     |
| Nominal capacity | 2,120 mAh   |

## Approximate storable number/recordable time

This lists the approximate number of shot images and recording times that can be saved on 1 GB microSD Card. The number of images that can be shot or recordable image lengths are fewer or less when other images or other types of files are saved on 1 GB microSD Card. Also, the number or time may be fewer or less depending on the shooting conditions and the subject.

### Number of still pictures that can be shot

|                    |                     |
|--------------------|---------------------|
| 4K2K: 3840×2160    | Approx. 290 shots   |
| FULL HD: 1920×1080 | Approx. 1,100 shots |
| HD: 1280×720*      | Approx. 2,300 shots |
| 13M: 4128×3096     | Approx. 160 shots   |
| 3M: 2048×1536      | Approx. 760 shots   |
| 1.2M: 1280×960*    | Approx. 1,800 shots |
| VGA: 640×480       | Approx. 6,500 shots |

\* Available only when you use the in-camera.

### Recording time of video

#### Continuous shooting time of 1 GB microSD Card per shot

|                   |                |
|-------------------|----------------|
| FullHD: 1920×1080 | Approx. 8 min  |
| HD: 1280×720      | Approx. 21 min |
| VGA: 640×480      | Approx. 64 min |
| QVGA: 320×240     | Approx. 90 min |

#### Total shooting time of 1 GB microSD Card

|                   |                 |
|-------------------|-----------------|
| FullHD: 1920×1080 | Approx. 8 min   |
| HD: 1280×720      | Approx. 21 min  |
| VGA: 640×480      | Approx. 64 min  |
| QVGA: 320×240     | Approx. 324 min |

## Recording time of voice recorder

| Save destination                  | Number of entries | Recording time         |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------|------------------------|
| Handset memory (approx. 11.0 GB)* | Up to 316         | Up to approx. 1,896 hr |

\* Each recording time is up to approximately 6 hours.

# Specific Absorption Rate (SAR) of Mobile Phone

**This model SH-02F mobile phone complies with Japanese technical regulations and international guidelines regarding exposure to radio waves.**

This mobile phone was designed in observance of Japanese technical regulations regarding exposure to radio waves (\*1) and limits to exposure to radio waves recommended by a set of equivalent international guidelines. This set of international guidelines was set out by the International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP), which is in collaboration with the World Health Organization (WHO), and the permissible limits include a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health condition.

The technical regulations and international guidelines set out limits for radio waves as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR, which is the value of absorbed energy in any 10 grams of tissue over a 6-minute period. The SAR limit for mobile phones is 2.0 W/kg. The highest SAR value for this mobile phone when tested for use at the ear is 0.637 W/kg. There may be slight differences between the SAR levels for each product, but they all satisfy the limit.

The actual SAR of this mobile phone while operating can be well below that indicated above. This is due to automatic changes to the power level of the device to ensure it only uses the minimum required to reach the network. Therefore in general, the closer you are to a base station, the lower the power output of the device.

This mobile phone can be used in positions other than against your ear. This mobile phone satisfies the international guidelines when used with a carrying case or a wearable accessory approved by NTT DOCOMO, INC. (\*2). In case you are not using the approved accessory, please use a product that does not contain any metals, and one that positions the mobile phone at least 1.5 cm away from your body.

The World Health Organization has stated that "a large number of studies have been performed over the last two decades to assess whether mobile phones pose a potential health risk. To date, no adverse health effects have been established as being caused by mobile phone use."

Please refer to the WHO website if you would like more detailed information.

[http://www.who.int/docstore/peh-emf/publications/facts\\_press/fact\\_english.htm](http://www.who.int/docstore/peh-emf/publications/facts_press/fact_english.htm)

Please refer to the websites listed below if you would like more detailed information regarding SAR.

Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications Website:

<http://www.tele.soumu.go.jp/e/sys/ele/index.htm>

Association of Radio Industries and Businesses Website:

<http://www.arib-emf.org/index02.html> (in Japanese only)

NTT DOCOMO, INC. Website:

<http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english/product/sar/>

SHARP Corporation Website:

<http://www.sharp.co.jp/products/menu/phone/cellular/sar/index.html> (in Japanese only)

\*1 Technical regulations are defined by the Ministerial Ordinance Related to Radio Law (Article 14-2 of Radio Equipment Regulations).

\*2 Regarding the method of measuring SAR when using mobile phones in positions other than against the ear, international standards (IEC62209-2) were set in March of 2010. On the other hand, technical regulation is currently being deliberated on by national council (As of October, 2011).

## European RF Exposure Information

Your mobile device is a radio transmitter and receiver. It is designed not to exceed the limits for exposure to radio waves recommended by international guidelines. These guidelines were developed by the independent scientific organization ICNIRP and include safety margins designed to assure the protection of all persons, regardless of age and health.

The guidelines use a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit for mobile devices is 2 W/kg and the highest SAR value for this device when tested at the ear is 0.567 W/kg\* and when worn on the body is 0.451 W/kg\*. For body-worn operation, this mobile device has been tested and meets the RF exposure guidelines when used with an accessory containing no metal and positioning the handset a minimum of 1.5 cm from the body. Use of other accessories may not ensure compliance with RF exposure guidelines.

As SAR is measured utilizing the devices highest transmitting power the actual SAR of this device while operating is typically below that indicated above. This is due to automatic changes to the power level of the device to ensure it only uses the minimum level required to reach the network.

\* The tests are carried out in accordance with international guidelines for testing.

## Declaration of Conformity

# CE0168

In some countries/regions including Europe, there are restrictions on the use of 5GHz WLAN that may limit the use to indoors only. If you intend to use 5GHz WLAN on the device, check the local laws and regulations beforehand.

Hereby, Sharp Telecommunications of Europe Ltd, declares that this SH-02F is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.  
A copy of the original declaration of conformity can be found at the following Internet address:  
<http://www.sharp.co.jp/k-tai/> (in Japanese only)

## FCC Notice

- This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules.  
Operation is subject to the following two conditions:  
(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.
- Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the manufacturer responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

## Information to User

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits of a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation; if this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

1. Reorient/relocate the receiving antenna.
2. Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
3. Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.

4. Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

#### 5 GHz WLAN Operation in USA

Within the 5.15-5.25 GHz band, UNII devices are restricted to indoor operations to reduce any potential for harmful interference to co-channel Mobile Satellite Services (MSS) operations.

#### FCC RF Exposure Information

Your handset is a radio transmitter and receiver.

It is designed and manufactured not to exceed the emission limits for exposure to radio frequency (RF) energy set by the Federal Communications Commission of the U.S. Government.

The guidelines are based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organizations through periodic and thorough evaluation of scientific studies. The standards include a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health.

The exposure standard for wireless handsets employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit set by the FCC is 1.6 W/kg.

The tests are performed in positions and locations (e.g., at the ear and worn on the body) as required by the FCC for each model. The highest SAR value for this model handset when tested for use at the ear is 0.54 W/kg and when worn on the body, as described in this user guide, is 0.81 W/kg.

For body worn operation, this phone has been tested and meets the FCC RF exposure guidelines. Please use an accessory designated for this product or an accessory which contains no metal and which positions the handset a minimum of 1.5 cm from the body.

The use of accessories that do not satisfy these requirements may not comply with FCC RF exposure requirements, and should be avoided.

The FCC has granted an Equipment Authorization for this model handset with all reported SAR levels evaluated as in compliance with the FCC RF emission guidelines. SAR information on this model handset is on file with the FCC and can be found under the Display Grant section of <http://transition.fcc.gov/oet/ea/fccid/> after searching on FCC ID APYHRO00202.

Additional information on Specific Absorption Rates (SAR) can be found on the FCC website at <http://www.fcc.gov/encyclopedia/radio-frequency-safety>.

#### FCC ID Location

The FCC ID for this device can be found under the back cover. Please remove the back cover when you want to see the FCC ID.

## Export Administration Regulations

The Japan Export Administration Regulations ("Foreign Exchange and Foreign Trade Act" and its related laws) will be applied to this product and its accessories under certain conditions. The Export Administration Regulations are also applied. To export or reexport the handset and its accessories, conduct all legally required procedures at your own risk and expense. For details on the procedures, contact the Ministry of Economy, Trade and Industry or the US Department of Commerce.

## Intellectual Property Right

### Copyrights and rights of portrait

- Data with third party copyrights such as text, images, music and software that is downloaded via Internet web pages, acquired by TV, video, etc. or shot by the handset cannot be duplicated, altered or publicly transmitted without rightful party's consent. Only duplicating, quoting, etc. for personal use are permitted under the Copyright Act. Even if for personal use, filming and recording may be prohibited for demonstrations, performances and exhibitions. Also, shooting another's image or posting another's image on Internet web pages without their consent may constitute a violation of one's right to their image.

### Registered trademarks and trademarks

- "FOMA", "dmenu", "dmarket", "おサイフケータイ", "ToruCa", "mopera U", "Deco-mail", "i-appli", "i-mode", "i チャネル", "iD", "WORLD WING", "WORLD CALL", "i コンシェル", "sp-mode", "Xi", "eトリセツ", the "iD" logo and the "Xi" logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of NTT DOCOMO, INC.
- "Catch Phone (Call waiting service)" is a registered trademark of Nippon Telegraph and Telephone Corporation.
- Microsoft®, Windows®, Windows Media®, Windows Vista® and Exchange® are trademarks or registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- Oracle and Java are registered trademarks of Oracle and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.
- QR code is a registered trademark of Denso Wave Inc.
- microSD Logo, microSDHC Logo and microSDXC Logo are trademarks of SD-3C, LLC.



- The handset features LCFONT, developed by Sharp Corporation, to make the LCD easier to view and read. LCフォン/LCFONT and  are registered trademarks of Sharp Corporation.
- OBEX™ is a trademark of Infrared Data Association®.
-  is a registered trademark of FeliCa Networks, Inc.

- For DTS patents, see <http://patents.dts.com>. Manufactured under license from DTS Licensing Limited. DTS, the Symbol, & DTS and the Symbol together are registered trademarks, and DTS Sound is a trademark of DTS, Inc. © DTS, Inc. All Rights Reserved.



- PhotoScouter® is a registered trademark of Morpho, Inc.
- A O S S™ and AOSS™ are the trademarks of BUFFALO INC.
- Wi-Fi® is a registered trademark of Wi-Fi Alliance®.
- Wi-Fi Direct™, Miracast™, Wi-Fi Protected Setup™ and Wi-Fi Protected Setup logo are trademarks of Wi-Fi Alliance®. The Wi-Fi Protected Setup Mark is a mark of the Wi-Fi Alliance.
- “mixi” is a registered trademark of mixi, Inc.
- Twitter and Twitter logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Twitter, Inc.
- DLNA®, the DLNA Logo and DLNA CERTIFIED™ are trademarks, service marks, or certification marks of the Digital Living Network Alliance. Sharp Corporation has acquired DLNA certification for the device.
- This product includes software developed by the OpenSSL Project for use in the OpenSSL Toolkit. (<http://www.openssl.org/>)
- This product includes cryptographic software written by Eric Young (eay@cryptsoft.com)
- Portions Copyright © 2004 Intel Corporation  
This product partly uses the software of Intel Corporation.
- iWnn of OMRON SOFTWARE Co., Ltd. is used for conversion methods for Japanese language, and for phrase prediction methods for English.  
iWnn © OMRON SOFTWARE Co., Ltd. 2008-2014 All Rights Reserved.  
iWnn IME © OMRON SOFTWARE Co., Ltd. 2009-2014 All Rights Reserved.
- Shin Go M, the font type installed in this product, is provided by Morisawa & Company, Ltd.  
\* Shin Go is a registered trademark of Morisawa & Company, Ltd.
- aptX is a registered trademark of CSR plc.
- DigiOn and DiXiM are trademarks of DigiOn, Inc.
- X-Men, all character names and their distinctive likenesses: TM & © 2013 Marvel Entertainment, LLC and its subsidiaries. All Rights Reserved.  
© 2013 Twentieth Century Fox Film Corporation and TSG Entertainment Finance LLC. All Rights Reserved.  
© 2014 Twentieth Century Fox Home Entertainment LLC. All Rights Reserved. TWENTIETH CENTURY FOX, FOX and associated logos are trademarks of Twentieth Century Fox Film Corporation and its related entities.
- “AQUOS PHONE”, “IGZO”, “Feel UX”, “Welcome Sheet”, “VeilView”, “Bright Keep”, “Sweep ON”, “Shake OFF”, “Another View”, “AQUOS PHONE” logo and “エコ技” symbol are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sharp Corporation.
- All other company names and product names are trademarks or registered trademarks of the respective companies.

## Others

- FeliCa is a contactless IC card technology developed by Sony Corporation. FeliCa is a registered trademark of Sony Corporation.
- Under the MPEG-4 Visual Patent Portfolio License, customers have licensed permission for the following use of this product to engage in non-profit personal use. Other uses are not permitted.
  - Encoding MPEG-4 standard video (henceforth referred to as MPEG-4 video).
  - Decoding an MPEG-4 video that a customer not engaged in personal commercial activities has encoded.
  - Decoding an MPEG-4 video obtained from a licensed provider.
 For details on other intended uses, contact MPEG LA, LLC.
- This product is licensed under the MPEG-4 Systems Patent Portfolio License for encoding in compliance with the MPEG-4 Systems Standard. An additional license and payment of royalties are necessary in the following cases.
  - Data stored or replicated in physical media which is paid for on a title by title basis.
  - Data which is paid for on a title by title basis and is transmitted to an end user for permanent storage and/or use.
 Such additional license may be obtained from MPEG LA, LLC. Contact MPEG LA, LLC for additional details.
- This product is licensed under the AVC patent portfolio license for the personal and noncommercial use of a consumer to (i) encode video in compliance with the AVC standard (henceforth referred to as AVC video) and/or (ii) decode AVC video that was encoded by a consumer engaged in a personal and noncommercial activity and/or was obtained from a video provider licensed to provide AVC video. No license is granted or shall be implied for any other use. Additional information may be obtained from MPEG LA, L.L.C.  
See <http://www.mpegla.com>
- This product is licensed under the VC-1 Patent Portfolio License for the personal and noncommercial use of a consumer to (i) encode video in compliance with the VC-1 standard (henceforth referred to as VC-1 video) and/or (ii) decode VC-1 video that was encoded by a consumer engaged in a personal and noncommercial activity and/or was obtained from a video provider licensed to provide VC-1 video. No license is granted or shall be implied for any other use. Additional information may be obtained from MPEG LA, L.L.C.  
See <http://www.mpegla.com>
- Content owners use Microsoft PlayReady™ content access technology to protect their intellectual property, including copyrighted content. This device uses PlayReady technology to access PlayReady-protected content and/or WMDRM-protected content. If the device fails to properly enforce restrictions on content usage, content owners may require Microsoft to revoke the device's ability to consume PlayReady-protected content. Revocation should not affect unprotected content or content protected by other content access technologies. Content owners may require you to upgrade PlayReady to access their content. If you decline an upgrade, you will not be able to access content that requires the upgrade.

- The abbreviations of operating systems (Japanese versions) below are used in this manual.
  - Windows 8 stands for Microsoft® Windows® 8, Microsoft® Windows® 8 Pro and Microsoft® Windows® 8 Enterprise.
  - Windows 7 stands for Microsoft® Windows® 7 (Starter, Home Basic, Home Premium, Professional, Enterprise and Ultimate).
  - Windows Vista stands for Windows Vista® (Home Basic, Home Premium, Business, Enterprise and Ultimate).
  - Windows XP indicates the Microsoft® Windows® XP Professional operating system or Microsoft® Windows® XP Home Edition operating system.
- The Bluetooth word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, INC. and any use of such marks by NTT DOCOMO, INC. is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.
- Google, Google logo, Android, Android logo, Google Play, Google Play logo, Google+, Google+ logo, Gmail, Gmail logo, Calendar logo, Google Maps™, Google Maps logo, Google Talk™, Google Talk logo, Google Chrome™, Google Chrome logo, Google Voice Search™ logo, Picasa™, Picasa logo, YouTube and YouTube logo are trademarks of Google Inc.

## Open source software

---

- This product includes software based on GNU General Public License (GPL), GNU Lesser General Public License (LGPL) and other licenses.  
For details on licenses of related software, in the home screen, [⌘] ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Device info] ▶ [Legal information] ▶ [Open source licenses].
- Source codes of software based on GPL, LGPL and Mozilla Public License (MPL) can be referred to on the following website for free. For details, refer to the following website.  
<https://sh-dev.sharp.co.jp/android/modules/oss/> (in Japanese only)

## Unlocking SIM lock

---

- The handset can unlock the SIM lock. Unlock the SIM lock to use non-DOCOMO SIM cards.
- SIM lock can be unlocked at a docomo Shop.
- Commission is incurred separately for unlocking SIM lock.
- When using non-DOCOMO SIM card, it cannot be used in LTE. Also, some services and functions are unavailable. DOCOMO shall not guarantee any operation of the handset.
- For details on unlocking SIM lock, refer to the DOCOMO website.

## A

|                               |    |
|-------------------------------|----|
| About Gmail                   | 40 |
| Access Point Names            | 78 |
| Access to my location         | 63 |
| Accessibility                 |    |
| Setting Browser               | 41 |
| Settings                      | 66 |
| Accessibility shortcut        | 66 |
| Adding contacts to phonebook  | 34 |
| Adding VPN                    | 76 |
| Addr.book pic backup          | 57 |
| Adjust sensitivity of sensor  | 67 |
| Adjust touch panel            | 67 |
| Advanced                      | 41 |
| Advanced call settings        | 34 |
| Advanced Settings             | 75 |
| After Android version upgrade | 86 |
| Airplane mode                 | 62 |
| Alarm                         |    |
| Alarm/Clock                   | 52 |
| Schedule                      | 53 |
| Alarm notification            | 72 |
| Alarm settings                | 47 |
| Album                         | 49 |
| Android beam                  |    |
| NFC communication             | 73 |
| NFC/Osaifu-Keitai settings    | 44 |
| Android version               | 67 |
| Android version upgrade       | 85 |
| Answer time setting           | 33 |
| Answering Memo List           | 33 |
| Answering memo setting        | 33 |
| Answering message setting     | 33 |
| Any key answer settings       | 33 |
| App list                      | 28 |
| App screen layout             | 28 |
| Application                   | 62 |
| Application lock              | 64 |
| Application manager           | 63 |
| aptX                          | 72 |
| Ask to show pictures          | 39 |
| Audible touch tones           | 59 |
| Audio settings                | 47 |
| Audio/Subtitles settings      | 47 |
| Authentication                | 67 |
| Auto capitalization           | 19 |
| Auto cursor move              | 18 |
| Auto space input              | 19 |
| Auto timezone                 | 66 |
| Auto-advance                  | 39 |
| AUTO-GPS                      | 63 |
| Automatic brightness          | 60 |
| Automatic conversion function | 78 |
| Automatic date & time         | 66 |
| Auto-reset                    | 34 |
| Auto-rotate screen            |    |
| Accessibility                 | 66 |
| Display                       | 60 |
| Available services overseas   | 77 |
| Avoid poor connections        | 22 |

## B

|                                |    |
|--------------------------------|----|
| Back cover                     | 12 |
| Backing up/Restoring phonebook | 36 |
| Backup & reset                 | 66 |
| Bandwidth management           | 41 |

|                                            |    |
|--------------------------------------------|----|
| Bar code reader                            | 55 |
| Baseband version                           | 67 |
| Batch change lock screen/ home application | 26 |
| Battery                                    | 61 |
| Battery & energy saving                    | 61 |
| Beep tone                                  | 41 |
| Before use overseas                        | 77 |
| Before using camera                        | 47 |
| Beginning prediction for mail              | 19 |
| Bluetooth function                         | 70 |
| Bluetooth Smart device connection          | 72 |
| Bookmark                                   | 42 |
| Brightness                                 | 60 |
| Build number                               | 67 |
| Business card reader                       | 55 |

## C

|                                                 |    |
|-------------------------------------------------|----|
| Calculator                                      | 54 |
| Call forwarding service                         | 34 |
| Call forwarding(charged)                        | 79 |
| Call notification                               | 34 |
| Call settings/Other                             | 33 |
| Call time                                       | 34 |
| Call waiting                                    | 34 |
| Caller ID display request service               | 34 |
| Caller ID notification                          | 34 |
| Caller ID notification request service(charged) | 79 |
| Camera                                          | 49 |
| Card reader mode                                | 61 |
| Change account                                  | 53 |
| Change Kisekai                                  | 27 |
| Change name                                     | 26 |
| Change SIM PIN                                  | 65 |
| Change wallpaper                                | 27 |
| Changing kisekai                                | 27 |
| Changing screen display to English              | 20 |
| Changing security key                           | 65 |
| Changing wallpapers                             | 27 |
| Charging                                        | 14 |
| Charging with AC adapter/DC adapter             | 14 |
| Charging with Micro USB Cable 01                | 15 |
| Check screen image and beep tone                | 41 |
| Checking/Using phonebook                        | 35 |
| Choose date format                              | 66 |
| Clear credentials                               | 63 |
| Clear learning dictionary                       | 19 |
| Cloud setting                                   | 53 |
| Confirm before deleting                         | 39 |
| Connecting the handset and PC                   | 74 |
| Connecting VPN                                  | 76 |
| Contacting docomo                               | 34 |
| Contacts data access monitor                    | 63 |
| Contacts name collaboration                     | 19 |
| Contents                                        | 1  |
| Contents Manager                                | 69 |
| Controller display position                     | 47 |
| Cooperating with Blu-ray Disc recorder          | 76 |
| Copies                                          |    |
| Canon Wi-Fi compatible printer settings         | 74 |
| EPSON Wi-Fi compatible printer settings         | 75 |
| Country code                                    | 78 |
| Create by searching channels                    | 45 |
| Create by selecting the area                    | 45 |
| Create folder                                   | 27 |
| Creating channel lists                          | 45 |
| Cumulated call time                             | 34 |

## D

|                                                               |    |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| Data broadcasting settings                                    | 47 |
| Data enabled                                                  | 78 |
| Data import                                                   | 66 |
| Data roaming                                                  | 78 |
| Data transfer                                                 | 66 |
| Data usage                                                    | 62 |
| Data usage check                                              | 63 |
| Date & time                                                   | 66 |
| Daydream                                                      | 60 |
| Default                                                       | 65 |
| Delete key behavior                                           | 18 |
| Delete old messages                                           | 37 |
| Deleting Early Warning "Area Mail"                            | 40 |
| Deleting mail                                                 | 39 |
| Deleting message                                              | 37 |
| Deleting outgoing/incoming call history                       | 33 |
| Deleting phonebook                                            | 36 |
| Deleting thread                                               |    |
| Gmail                                                         | 40 |
| Messaging                                                     | 37 |
| Delivery reports                                              | 37 |
| Device administrator                                          | 63 |
| Device info                                                   | 67 |
| Dial pad touch tones                                          | 59 |
| Dialpad touch tones                                           | 34 |
| Dictionary                                                    | 56 |
| Disable BT Smart settings                                     | 72 |
| Disable secret mode temporarily                               | 64 |
| Disabling PIN lock                                            | 65 |
| Disconnecting VPN                                             | 76 |
| Display                                                       | 60 |
| Display left percents of Battery                              | 60 |
| Displaying mail                                               |    |
| Email                                                         | 38 |
| Gmail                                                         | 39 |
| Displaying message                                            | 37 |
| Displaying websites                                           | 41 |
| dmarket                                                       | 43 |
| dmenu                                                         | 43 |
| Do not upgrade                                                | 86 |
| docomo apps password                                          | 63 |
| docomo backup (Backing up to/Restoring from a microSD Card)   | 58 |
| docomo backup (Backing up to/Restoring from Data Storage Box) | 57 |
| docomo cloud                                                  | 63 |
| docomo location information                                   | 63 |
| docomo mail                                                   | 37 |
| docomo mini UIM card                                          | 13 |
| docomo service/cloud                                          | 63 |
| docomo Wi-Fi Easy Connection                                  | 63 |
| Download dictionary                                           | 19 |
| Download later (only via Wi-Fi)                               | 86 |
| Download later (via Wi-Fi or Xi)                              | 86 |
| Download now (only via Wi-Fi)                                 | 86 |
| Downloading upgrade files                                     | 86 |
| Downward slide                                                | 19 |
| Drive manner mode                                             | 59 |

## E

|                                |    |
|--------------------------------|----|
| Early Warning "Area Mail"      | 40 |
| Eco backlight control          | 60 |
| Editing phonebook              | 36 |
| Email                          | 38 |
| Emergency call                 | 31 |
| Emoji/Symb/:) continuous input | 19 |
| Emoji/Symbol list rows         | 18 |

|                                   |    |
|-----------------------------------|----|
| Encrypting phone                  | 65 |
| Energy save standby               | 61 |
| Energy saving settings            | 61 |
| English guidance                  | 34 |
| Enhance web accessibility         | 66 |
| Entering characters               | 19 |
| Entering touch-tone signals       | 31 |
| Erase microSD                     | 60 |
| Export Administration Regulations | 89 |
| Extra conversion engine           | 19 |

## F

|                      |    |
|----------------------|----|
| Favorites            | 25 |
| File Management      | 60 |
| Finger list          | 65 |
| Flick sensitivity    | 18 |
| Font Settings        | 60 |
| For Incoming call    | 59 |
| For notification     | 59 |
| Forwarding message   | 37 |
| Function information | 66 |

## G

|                             |    |
|-----------------------------|----|
| General inquiries to DOCOMO | 34 |
| General settings            |    |
| Setting Browser             | 41 |
| Setting Gmail               | 40 |
| Gmail                       | 39 |
| Google Keyboard             | 65 |
| Google voice typing         | 65 |
| GSM                         | 78 |
| Guide                       | 64 |

## H

|                                   |    |
|-----------------------------------|----|
| Handling precautions              | 7  |
| Handset memory (internal storage) | 68 |
| Handsfree setting                 | 72 |
| Hangouts                          | 52 |
| Haptic feedback                   |    |
| Lock & security                   | 64 |
| Sound                             | 59 |
| History                           |    |
| Browser                           | 42 |
| Quick Launcher                    | 25 |
| Home applications                 |    |
| Home applications                 | 26 |
| Settings                          | 26 |
| Home network server               | 75 |
| Home network server name          | 75 |
| Home network settings             | 75 |
| Home screens                      | 27 |

## I

|                                                  |    |
|--------------------------------------------------|----|
| iD appli                                         | 58 |
| Illumination                                     | 59 |
| Importing/Exporting phonebook                    | 22 |
| Improve appearance                               | 60 |
| Incoming call notification                       | 72 |
| Incoming notification while roaming              | 79 |
| Incoming/Charging illumination                   | 23 |
| Information on applications                      | 30 |
| Initial screen                                   | 53 |
| Initial setting                                  | 20 |
| Inquiries about loss, theft, etc. while overseas | 34 |
| Inquiries about malfunctions while overseas      | 34 |
| Inquiries to DOCOMO about malfunctions           | 34 |
| Install from microSD                             | 63 |

|                                             |    |
|---------------------------------------------|----|
| Installing recommended apps                 | 30 |
| Installing upgrade files                    | 86 |
| Intellectual Property Right                 | 89 |
| International call (WORLD CALL)             | 32 |
| International dial assist                   | 79 |
| International prefix                        | 78 |
| Introduction of options and related devices | 80 |
| IP address                                  | 22 |
| iWnn IME - SH edition                       | 65 |

## K

|                   |    |
|-------------------|----|
| Kernel version    | 67 |
| Key input guide   | 18 |
| Keyboard image    | 18 |
| Keyboard layout   | 18 |
| Keyboard layouts  | 17 |
| Koe-no-Takuhaibin | 34 |

## L

|                        |    |
|------------------------|----|
| Language & input       | 65 |
| Large text             | 66 |
| Layout                 | 74 |
| Leftward slide         | 19 |
| Legal information      | 67 |
| Link loss notification | 72 |
| Local                  | 52 |
| Location services      | 63 |
| Lock & security        | 63 |
| Lock No. change        | 44 |
| Lock SIM card          | 65 |
| LTE/3G                 | 78 |
| LTE/3G/GSM(Auto)       | 78 |

## M

|                                                              |    |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| MAC address                                                  | 22 |
| Machi-Chara display setting                                  | 27 |
| Magnification gestures                                       | 66 |
| Mail reception notification                                  | 72 |
| Main specifications                                          | 86 |
| Make pattern visible                                         | 64 |
| Making a call                                                | 31 |
| Making a call in your country of stay                        | 78 |
| Making a call outside your country of stay (including Japan) | 78 |
| Making a call to a WORLD WING subscriber overseas            | 78 |
| Making a call using International Dial Assist                | 78 |
| Manage SIM card messages                                     | 37 |
| Managing apps                                                | 30 |
| Managing home screen                                         | 27 |
| Managing pages                                               | 27 |
| Managing playlists                                           | 50 |
| Maps                                                         | 51 |
| Media Player                                                 | 50 |
| Media Type                                                   | 74 |
| Memo                                                         | 54 |
| Message text size                                            | 39 |
| microSD backup                                               | 57 |
| microSD Card (external storage)                              | 68 |
| microSD reader/writer                                        | 74 |
| Mini app/Widget                                              | 25 |
| Mobile networks                                              | 62 |
| Mode settings                                                |    |
| OFF                                                          | 59 |
| Sound                                                        | 59 |
| Model number                                                 | 67 |
| Moji-Henshu                                                  | 65 |
| More                                                         | 62 |
| Mount microSD                                                | 60 |
| MTP mode                                                     | 61 |

|             |    |
|-------------|----|
| My magazine | 30 |
| My profile  | 36 |

## N

|                                 |    |
|---------------------------------|----|
| Navigation                      | 51 |
| Network mode                    | 78 |
| Network notification            | 21 |
| Network operators               | 78 |
| Network service                 |    |
| Call settings/Other             | 34 |
| Roaming settings                | 79 |
| Network services during roaming | 79 |
| Next word guess                 | 19 |
| NFC communication               | 73 |
| NFC screen-unlock settings      | 63 |
| NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock          | 44 |
| NFC/Osaifu-Keitai settings      | 44 |
| Notifications                   | 37 |
| Nuisance call blocking service  | 34 |

## O

|                                               |    |
|-----------------------------------------------|----|
| Open source licenses                          |    |
| Call settings/Other                           | 33 |
| docomo service/cloud                          | 63 |
| Operation during a call                       | 32 |
| Operation of touch panel                      | 16 |
| Operation while using function                | 16 |
| Organize backup files                         | 57 |
| Osaifu-Keitai                                 | 43 |
| Other settings                                | 41 |
| Outdoor view                                  | 60 |
| Outgoing/Incoming call history                | 33 |
| Outline of international roaming (WORLD WING) | 77 |
| Owner info                                    | 63 |

## P

|                                                 |    |
|-------------------------------------------------|----|
| Paper Settings                                  | 74 |
| Paper Size                                      | 74 |
| Part names and functions                        | 12 |
| Passcode                                        | 65 |
| Password                                        | 65 |
| Pattern setting                                 | 60 |
| Pedometer                                       | 54 |
| Pedometer On                                    | 55 |
| Pedometer Reset Time                            | 55 |
| Peel off                                        |    |
| Mini app/Widget                                 | 26 |
| Recent Apps                                     | 26 |
| Personal dictionary                             | 65 |
| Phone ringtone                                  | 34 |
| Phone search                                    | 17 |
| Play Store                                      | 43 |
| Playing recorded video                          | 46 |
| Pointer speed                                   | 65 |
| Power button ends call                          | 66 |
| Precautions (ALWAYS FOLLOW THESE DIRECTIONS)    | 4  |
| Precautions about holding over the other device | 44 |
| Prefix settings                                 | 34 |
| Print Quality                                   | 75 |
| Printer                                         |    |
| Canon Wi-Fi compatible printer settings         | 74 |
| EPSON Wi-Fi compatible printer settings         | 74 |
| Printing                                        | 75 |
| Printing Range                                  | 75 |
| Privacy & accounts                              | 17 |
| Privacy & security                              | 41 |
| Product information                             | 47 |
| Profile                                         | 59 |

|                                  |    |
|----------------------------------|----|
| Profile setting                  | 63 |
| PTP mode                         | 61 |
| Public mode (power OFF) settings | 34 |
| Purchasing app                   | 43 |

## Q

|                      |    |
|----------------------|----|
| Quality mode         | 60 |
| Quick Launcher       | 25 |
| Quick operation・Labs | 41 |
| Quick silent         | 33 |

## R

|                                    |    |
|------------------------------------|----|
| Reader/Writer, P2P                 | 44 |
| Receive setting                    | 41 |
| Receiving a call                   | 32 |
| Receiving a call overseas          | 79 |
| Recent Apps                        | 26 |
| Recent apps key                    | 61 |
| Recording                          | 46 |
| Recording/Watching reservation     | 47 |
| Reject call from pay phone         | 34 |
| Reject call setting                | 34 |
| Reject private number call         | 34 |
| Reject SMS                         | 33 |
| Reject specified numbers call      | 34 |
| Reject unknown call                | 34 |
| Reject unregistered call           | 34 |
| Remote Initialization Service      | 63 |
| Remote operation settings          | 34 |
| Remote operation(charged)          | 79 |
| Rename phone                       | 72 |
| Reply all                          | 39 |
| Replying message                   | 37 |
| Replying/Forwarding mail           |    |
| Email                              | 39 |
| Gmail                              | 40 |
| Reset all                          | 66 |
| Reset cumulated call time          | 34 |
| Reset facemark list                | 19 |
| Resetting an access point          | 21 |
| Restrict calls                     | 64 |
| Restricting incoming calls         | 79 |
| Rightward slide                    | 19 |
| Roaming call notification(charged) | 79 |
| Roaming guidance                   | 79 |
| Roaming guidance(charged)          | 79 |
| Roaming settings                   | 79 |
| Romaji input assistance            | 18 |

## S

|                                                   |    |
|---------------------------------------------------|----|
| Save data to microSD                              | 66 |
| Saved page                                        | 42 |
| Schedule                                          | 53 |
| Schedule notification                             | 72 |
| Screen edge effect                                | 60 |
| Screen lock                                       | 63 |
| Screen lock sounds                                | 59 |
| Screen on/off with motion                         | 60 |
| Screen timeout                                    | 60 |
| Searching information on the handset and websites | 17 |
| Second call settings                              | 34 |
| Secrecy settings                                  | 64 |
| Security codes used on the handset                | 64 |
| Select Application or Shortcut                    | 26 |
| Select language                                   | 65 |
| Select time zone                                  | 66 |
| Self check                                        | 61 |
| Send device error information                     | 63 |

|                                    |    |
|------------------------------------|----|
| Sending and receiving by Bluetooth | 72 |
| Sending and receiving by iC        | 70 |
| Set contact secrecy                | 64 |
| Set date                           | 66 |
| Set docomo ID                      | 63 |
| Set the default settings           | 19 |
| Set time                           | 66 |
| Set up Wi-Fi hotspot               | 22 |
| Setting 1Seg                       | 47 |
| Setting an access point            | 21 |
| Setting Browser                    | 41 |
| Setting character entry            | 18 |
| Setting Early Warning "Area Mail"  | 41 |
| Setting genres                     | 30 |
| Setting Gmail                      | 40 |
| Setting mail                       | 39 |
| Setting menu                       | 59 |
| Setting message                    | 37 |
| Setting start-up screen            | 34 |
| Setting up Google account etc.     | 22 |
| Setting up mail account            | 22 |
| Setting up SIM card lock           | 65 |
| Settings for use overseas          | 78 |
| SH tool                            | 54 |
| Show apps                          | 27 |
| Show received files                | 72 |
| Show widgets                       | 27 |
| Silent manner mode                 | 59 |
| SIP Accounts                       | 33 |
| Smartphone Anshin Remote Support   | 82 |
| SMS                                | 37 |
| Sorting data                       | 49 |

|                                                |    |
|------------------------------------------------|----|
| Sound                                          |    |
| Setting message                                | 38 |
| Settings                                       | 59 |
| Sound & vibration settings                     | 34 |
| Sound on key press                             | 18 |
| Sound start charging                           | 59 |
| Speak passwords                                | 66 |
| Specific Absorption Rate (SAR) of Mobile Phone | 88 |
| Spell checker                                  | 65 |
| sp-mode                                        | 21 |
| Standard manner mode                           | 59 |
| Starting day                                   | 53 |
| Status                                         | 67 |
| StopWatch                                      | 53 |
| Storage                                        | 60 |
| Store information reader                       | 55 |
| Sub address settings                           | 34 |
| Sweep ON/Shake OFF                             | 17 |
| Switch audio                                   | 47 |
| Switch sound-multiplex                         | 47 |
| Switch subtitles                               | 47 |
| Switching by motion                            | 60 |
| Synchronizing data                             | 62 |

## T

|                            |    |
|----------------------------|----|
| Tethering                  | 22 |
| Text message limit         | 37 |
| Text reader                | 56 |
| Text-to-speech output      |    |
| Accessibility              | 66 |
| Language & input           | 65 |
| Time change notification   | 72 |
| Timer                      | 53 |
| To default                 | 26 |
| "Today's schedule" setting | 53 |
| Toggle input               | 18 |
| ToruCa                     | 44 |
| Touch & hold delay         | 66 |

|                                   |    |
|-----------------------------------|----|
| Transferring data . . . . .       | 74 |
| Troubleshooting (FAQ) . . . . .   | 80 |
| Turning power on/off . . . . .    | 15 |
| TV (1Seg) . . . . .               | 45 |
| TV connection . . . . .           | 75 |
| TV link . . . . .                 | 46 |
| TV off timer . . . . .            | 47 |
| Typing error correction . . . . . | 19 |

## U

|                                                      |    |
|------------------------------------------------------|----|
| Unknown sources . . . . .                            | 63 |
| Unlocking SIM lock . . . . .                         | 91 |
| Unmount microSD . . . . .                            | 60 |
| Unmount USB memory . . . . .                         | 60 |
| Update birthday data . . . . .                       | 53 |
| Update conversion dictionary . . . . .               | 19 |
| Updating software . . . . .                          | 83 |
| Upgrade Android software . . . . .                   | 67 |
| Upward slide . . . . .                               | 19 |
| USB connection . . . . .                             | 61 |
| USB host function . . . . .                          | 75 |
| USB tethering . . . . .                              | 22 |
| Use 24-hour format . . . . .                         | 66 |
| Use GPS satellites . . . . .                         | 63 |
| Use Internet calling . . . . .                       | 33 |
| Use other functions . . . . .                        | 76 |
| Use secure credentials . . . . .                     | 63 |
| Useful . . . . .                                     | 61 |
| User dictionary . . . . .                            | 19 |
| User Information . . . . .                           | 55 |
| Using Android version upgrade . . . . .              | 85 |
| Using Bluetooth function . . . . .                   | 71 |
| Using GPS function . . . . .                         | 51 |
| Using groups . . . . .                               | 36 |
| Using iC communication . . . . .                     | 70 |
| Using “Kazashite-Link compatible services” . . . . . | 44 |
| Using Osaifu-Keitai compatible handset . . . . .     | 43 |
| Using “Osaifu-Keitai compatible services” . . . . .  | 44 |
| Using the handset . . . . .                          | 3  |
| Using the status panel . . . . .                     | 24 |

## V

|                                |    |
|--------------------------------|----|
| VeilView                       |    |
| Display . . . . .              | 60 |
| VeilView . . . . .             | 60 |
| Verify apps . . . . .          | 63 |
| Vibrate . . . . .              | 38 |
| Vibrate on key press . . . . . | 18 |
| Vibrate on ring . . . . .      | 34 |
| Video camera . . . . .         | 49 |
| View result screen . . . . .   | 57 |
| Viewing articles . . . . .     | 30 |
| Viewing home screen . . . . .  | 27 |
| Viewing icons . . . . .        | 23 |
| Visibility timeout . . . . .   | 72 |
| Visible passwords . . . . .    | 63 |
| Voice . . . . .                | 17 |
| Voice input provider . . . . . | 18 |
| Voice mail service . . . . .   | 34 |
| Voice mail(charged) . . . . .  | 79 |
| Voice Memo List . . . . .      | 33 |
| Voice recorder . . . . .       | 54 |
| Voice Search . . . . .         | 65 |
| Voice/Answering memo . . . . . | 33 |
| Volume . . . . .               | 59 |
| VPN settings . . . . .         | 62 |

## W

|                                               |    |
|-----------------------------------------------|----|
| Wallpaper . . . . .                           | 60 |
| Warranty and After-Sales Service . . . . .    | 83 |
| Watch programs dubbed to device . . . . .     | 76 |
| Watch programs recorded in recorder . . . . . | 76 |
| Watching TV . . . . .                         | 45 |
| Waterproof . . . . .                          | 10 |
| Web browser settings . . . . .                | 47 |
| Welcome Sheet(lock screen) . . . . .          | 60 |
| Wi-Fi & mobile network location . . . . .     | 63 |
| Wi-Fi for home NW server . . . . .            | 75 |
| Wi-Fi frequency band . . . . .                | 22 |
| Wi-Fi settings . . . . .                      | 21 |
| Wi-Fi sleep policy . . . . .                  | 22 |
| Wi-Fi tethering . . . . .                     | 22 |
| Wildcard prediction . . . . .                 | 19 |
| Wireless output(Miracast) . . . . .           | 62 |
| Wireless print . . . . .                      | 74 |
| Wireless print settings . . . . .             | 74 |
| Word prediction . . . . .                     | 19 |
| WORLD CALL . . . . .                          | 32 |
| WORLD WING . . . . .                          | 77 |
| WorldClock . . . . .                          | 53 |

## Y

|                   |    |
|-------------------|----|
| YouTube . . . . . | 52 |
|-------------------|----|

Check/Change the subscription, apply for various services, and request various information materials online.

From sp-mode dmenu ▶ お客様サポート (Support) ▶ 各種お申込・お手続き (Various Applications/Procedures) (free of packet communication charges) (in Japanese only)

From a PC My docomo (<http://www.mydocomo.com/>) ▶ 各種お申込・お手続き (Various Applications/Procedures) (in Japanese only)

- ※ Use “network security code” to access from sp-mode.
- ※ Some services may be charged when you access the website from sp-mode.
- ※ Use “docomo ID/Password” to access from a PC.
- ※ If you do not have or you have forgotten your “network security code” or “docomo ID/Password”, contact the number listed in “General Inquiries” on the last page.
- ※ The websites may not be available depending upon the content of your subscription.
- ※ You may not be able to access some website services due to system maintenance etc.

## Using mobile phone with your manners!

Please be considerate of those around you when using the handset.

### Turn off your handset in the following places

#### ■ When in an area where use is prohibited

When you are on an airplane or in a hospital, follow the instructions given by the respective airlines or medical facilities. Turn off the handset in areas where the use of mobile phones is prohibited.

### Set the Public mode in the following places

#### ■ While driving

Using a mobile phone in hand while driving is regarded as a punishable act.

However, some cases such as when rescuing sick and injured people or maintaining public safety are exempted.

#### ■ When in public places such as theaters, movie theaters or museums

Using the handset in public places where you should be quiet results in disturbing others.

### Be aware of the place to use a mobile phone and the volume of your voice and ringtone

- Be aware of the volume of your voice when using the handset in quiet places such as restaurant and hotel lobby.
- Use in places where you do not block a passage in the town.

### Be considerate of the privacy of the individuals around you

Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

### Do not use your smartphone while walking

- Using your smartphone while walking on a platform of a train station, street, etc. may narrow your vision and cause a collision.
- Use your smartphone in a safe place after you stop walking.

### These functions ensure the manner in public

The handset has convenient functions such as setting not to answer a call and setting to mute sound of the handset.

#### ● Manner mode (☎ P. 59 “Mode settings”)

Mutes sound of the handset.

※ However, the manner mode cannot mute camera shutter sound.

#### ● Public Mode (Phone OFF) (☎ P. 34 “Network service”)

When a call is received, a message stating that you are in a place that does not allow the use of mobile phone is played and the call is automatically disconnected.

#### ● Phone vibe (☎ P. 59 “Sound”)

Notifies you of incoming call with vibration.

#### ● Answering memo (☎ P. 33 “Voice/Answering memo”)

Records callers' messages when you cannot answer the call.

※ Additionally, optional services such as Voice Mail Service (☎ P. 34 “Network service”) and Call Forwarding Service (☎ P. 34 “Network service”) are available.



モバイル・リサイクル・ネットワーク  
携帯電話 PHS のリサイクルにご協力。

We collect your unnecessary mobile phones and other devices irrespective of carrier. Bring them to a docomo Shop near you.

※ Intended devices: Mobile phone, PHS, battery pack, charger and desktop holder (irrespective of carrier)

## General Inquiries <docomo Information Center>

(Business hours: 9:00 a.m. to 8:00 p.m.)

 **0120-005-250 (toll free)**

※ Service available in: English, Portuguese, Chinese, Spanish.

※ Unavailable from part of IP phones.

(Business hours: 9:00 a.m. to 8:00 p.m. (open all year round))

■ **From DOCOMO mobile phones  
(In Japanese only)**

 **(No prefix) 151 (toll free)**

※ Unavailable from land-line phones, etc.

■ **From land-line phones (In Japanese only)**

 **0120-800-000 (toll free)**

※ Unavailable from part of IP phones.

● Please confirm the phone number before you dial.

● For Applications or Repairs and After-Sales Service, please contact the above-mentioned information center or the docomo Shop etc. near you on the NTT DOCOMO website.

**NTT DOCOMO website** <http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english/>

## Repairs

(Business hours: 24 hours (open all year round))

■ **From DOCOMO mobile phones  
(In Japanese only)**

 **(No prefix) 113 (toll free)**

※ Unavailable from land-line phones, etc.

■ **From land-line phones (In Japanese only)**

 **0120-800-000 (toll free)**

※ Unavailable from part of IP phones.

## For loss, theft, malfunction, and inquiries while overseas (24-hour reception)

■ **From DOCOMO mobile phones**

**International call access code  
for the country you stay**

**-81-3-6832-6600\* (toll free)**

\* You are charged a call fee to Japan when calling from a land-line phone, etc.

※ If you use SH-02F, you should dial the number +81-3-6832-6600 (to enter "+", touch and hold "0").

■ **From land-line phones <Universal number>**

**Universal number  
international prefix**

**-8000120-0151\***

\* You might be charged a domestic call fee according to the call rate for the country you stay.

※ For international call access codes for major countries and universal number international prefix, refer to DOCOMO International Services website.

● **If you lose your handset or have it stolen, immediately take the steps necessary for suspending the use of the handset.**

● **If the handset you purchased is damaged, bring your handset to a repair counter specified by DOCOMO after returning to Japan.**



**Don't forget your mobile phone... or your manners!**

When using your mobile phone in a public place, don't forget to show common courtesy and consideration for others around you.



**危険です、  
歩きスマホ。**

Sales: NTT DOCOMO, INC.  
Manufacturer: SHARP Corporation